Using This Manual

Function & Service Search	Contents ······ Index: Try searching by various terms. ······	Page vi Page 13-32
Objective Search	Objective Search·····	Page ii Page 13-32
Function Search	Feature Search	Page iv Page vi
Display Indicators	Display Indicators Menu Operations	Page 1-4 Page 2-2
Manual Overview	Contents ······· Chapter Contents: First page of each chapter ·······	Page vi Page 1-1~13-1
Solving Problems	Troubleshooting ······· Warranty & After Sales Service ······	Page 13-7 Page 13-44

Getting Started	1
Basic Operations	2
Call	3
Messaging	4
Internet	5
Camera/Picture Editing	6
Media Player/S! Appli	7
Tools	8
Communication Services	9
Security	10
File Transfer/Backup	11
Customization	12
Appendix	13

Objective Search

Using Handset Phone
Number/Mail Address

Customizing Handset

Understanding Basics

Checking Handset Number

Check your phone number on the handset.

Checking Your Phone Number ⇒ Page 3-3

Ringtone

Select a music file, movie file or Chaku-Uta® from ringtone settings.

Ringtone ⇒ Page 12-9

Basic Operations

Using keys and accessing functions.

Menu Operations ⇒ Page 2-2 Softkeys and Multi Selector ⇒ Page xi

Using Handset as a Portable Music Player Use Media Player to listen to downloaded music.

Media Player ⇒ Page 7-2

Customizing Mail Address

Customizing handset address can help reduce spam.

Customizing Handset Address ⇒ Page 4-3

Downloading Chaku-Uta®

Download your favorite songs from the Chaku-Uta® site.

Obtaining Music and Videos ⇒ Page 7-3

Making Calls

Make voice/video calls. Use call functions such as Dialed Number or Answering Machine.

Voice Call ⇒ Page 3-4 Video Call ⇒ Page 3-7

Digital Camera/Digital Video

Enjoy shooting pictures and videos with handset camera.

Taking Pictures ⇒ Page 6-3 Recording Videos ⇒ Page 6-5

Using Advanced Features

Saving Address to Handset

Saving your new address to My Details is convenient for exchanging information with others.

My Details ⇒ Page 3-13

Standby Display

Set images captured with handset camera as wallpaper.

Setting Wallpaper ⇒ Page 2-8

Text Entry

Enter text when creating Phone Book entries or messages.

Text Entry ⇒ Page 2-11

Using Handset as a Gaming Device

Play preinstalled S! Appli games or download games from Yahoo! Keitai.

S! Appli \Rightarrow Page 7-8

Sharing Address with Friends

Share your new address by sending a message to multiple addresses simultaneously.

Sending Messages ⇒ Page 4-4, Page 4-6 Adding Recipients ⇒ Page 4-13

Changing Font Size

Change font size according to functions (web page, message window, etc.).

Setting the Font Size ⇒ Page 12-3

S! Mail/SMS

Select S! Mail or SMS according to your purpose.

S! Mail \Rightarrow Page 4-4 $SMS \Rightarrow Page 4-6$

Sharing Address via Infrared

Share your e-mail address by infrared transfer. Save your e-mail address prior to transfer.

Infrared ⇒ Page 11-2

Setting Twinkle Light

Set or create your own illumination pattern of Twinkle Light that notifies you of incoming calls or messages, etc.

Twinkle Light ⇒ Page 12-5

Accessing the Mobile Internet

Use Yahoo! Keitai to access Mobile Internet sites tailored for SoftBank customers.

Yahoo! Keitai ⇒ Page 5-3

Feature Search

822T Features SoftBank Features

Waterproof

The 822T is waterproof (equivalent to IPX5/IPX7) enabling operations with wet hands in the bathroom or in the rain.

→Page xxix

Simple Mode

The 822T is provided with Simple Mode that enables easy and simplified operations of various functions.

⇒Page 2-6

Yahoo! Keitai Sites

A special portal site for SoftBank handsets is available to enhance your Internet browsing experience.

⇒Page 5-3

Arrange Mail/Feeling Mail

Send Arrange Mail (HTML mail) or Feeling Mail.

⇒Page 4-5

Convenient Features

Phone Book/S! Addressbook Back-up

Save contact information to Phone Book and back up data on S! Addressbook Server.

⇒Page 2-17, Page 11-8

Alarm/Event Schedule

Use the alarm to wake you in the morning. Save and manage event schedule on the calendar that can be interfaced with phone/mail functions.

⇒Page 8-4, Page 8-11

PC-related Features

PC Site Browser

The 822T can display websites intended for PCs, allowing you to view information just as you would with a PC.

⇒Page 5-4

Data Transfer Mode

(for use with PC)

Use the USB cable (sold separately) to connect handset to a PC and access microSD memory card from the PC.

⇒Page 11-4

1.96 Megapixel Camera

The 822T is equipped with a 1.96 megapixel camera that takes high-quality photos and video.

⇒Page 6-2

MicroSD Memory Card

The 822T supports compact high-capacity microSD memory cards. This makes exchanging files with a PC quick and easy.

⇒Page 2-25

Electronic Books

The electronic book viewer allows browsing of electronic books and handset manuals

⇒Page 8-17

S! Town/S! Loop/S! Information Channel

These SoftBank-only communication services allow you to find friends in a virtual town, keep a diary or see latest information including weather forecasts.

Access product information, etc. on the web

⇒Page 8-16, Page 9-2

Barcode Reader

S! Friend's Status/S! Circle Talk

These two functions boost communication. Use S! Friend's Status to share your mood/availability and S! Circle Talk to talk to a group of people.

⇒Page 9-3, Page 9-6

Voice Recorder

Use 822T as a recorder. Save recordings to microSD memory card.

⇒Page 8-10

Optional Services

A complete line of services, including Call Forward and Voice Mail meet your phone needs.

⇒Page 3-10

using QR codes. **⇒**Page 8-18

Media Plaver

for use with PC

Transfer CD songs stored on your PC to a microSD memory card in the handset in data transfer mode. Then, use the handset as a portable music player.

⇒Page 7-2, Page 11-4

Contents

Introduction viii What's in the Box ix Using This Manual x Safety Precautions xii General Notes xxiv Waterproofing Precautions xxix End User License Agreement xxxvv Trademarks and Patents xxxvii SAR xl
1 Getting Started
Handset Parts
2 Basic Operations
Menu Operations 2-2 Simple Mode 2-6 Wallpaper/Active Window 2-8 Text Entry 2-11 Word List 2-16 Phone Book 2-17 Data Folder 2-22

Memory Card	2-25 2-27
3 Call	
Making Calls	3-4 3-7 3-9 3-10
4 Messaging	
Messaging	4-4 4-8 4-10
5 Internet	
Internet	5-3 5-4 5-5 5-6

6 Camera/Picture Editing	
Camera	6-3 6-5 6-7 6-8
7 Media Player/S! Appli	
Playing Music and Videos	7-7 7-8
8 Tools	
Tools	8-4 8-8 8-9 8-10 8-11
Kitchen Timer	

Electronic Books 8-17 Barcode Reader 8-18 My Locations 8-19 Ku-man's Room (Japanese) 8-20 Advanced Features 8-21	Incoming Event Settings
9 Communication Services S! Town (Japanese)/S! Loop (Japanese) 9-2 S! Friend's Status	Camera Settings
10 Security	Communications 12-37
Changing Handset Code10-2Prohibiting/Limiting Use10-3Biometrics10-5Advanced Features10-7	13 Appendix USIM Card
11 File Transfer/Backup	Software Update
Infrared 11-2 PC Connection 11-4 Memory Card Backup 11-6 S! Addressbook Back-up 11-8	Text Entry Keys
Advanced Features 11-10	Default Settings

Introduction

Thank you for purchasing the SoftBank 822T handset.

- To ensure proper usage, read this manual thoroughly before using the SoftBank 822T handset.
- After reading this manual, retain it for later reference.
- If this manual is lost or damaged, contact SoftBank General Information (page 13-45).
- Accessible services may be limited because of contract conditions.

SoftBank 822T handset is compatible with the 3G system.

Caution

- Unauthorized copying of any part of this manual is prohibited.
- The contents of this manual are subject to change without prior notice.
- Steps have been taken to ensure the accuracy of descriptions in this manual. If you find inaccurate or missing information, contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (page 13-45).

The User Guide (Japanese) and Start Book (Japanese) included in the package are also available online from the SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website: http://www.softbank.jp/mb/r/support/822t/

What's in the Box

● Handset ● Battery (TSBAR1) ● Battery Cover

Battery Cover Key (TSKBF1)
 Desktop Cradle (TSEBF1)
 Start Book (Japanese)

● User Guide (Japanese) ● First Step Guide ● Utility Software for 822T (CD-ROM)*1*2

*1 Complimentary sample not available for purchase.

*2 Utility Software updates/upgrades may become available via SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (http://www.softbank.jp) without prior notification. Please check for the newest versions of Utility Software and download as required.

- Use only SoftBank specified AC Charger (sold separately) and In-Car Charger (sold separately) to charge battery.
- For information about other accessories, contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (page 13-45).
- Battery is available for separate purchase.
- The 822T accepts microSD Memory Card (not included) and USB cable (sold separately). Purchase a commercially available microSD Memory Card or SoftBank specified USB cable to use related functions.
- microSD Memory Card is referred to as "memory card" in this manual.

Using This Manual

In this manual, SoftBank 822T is referred to as "handset."

Chapters

Chapter 1 "Getting Started": Basic handset information.

Chapter 2 "Basic Operations": Basic handset operations.

Chapters 3 to 11: Handset functions. Each chapter starts with basic operation descriptions, followed by advanced operation descriptions.

Chapter 12: Handset settings.

Chapter 13 "Appendix": Default settings, Index, etc.



Symbols

→ , → and ▶ navigate you to the next action/item.

Press • (Center Key) to confirm your selection. Some operations are not fully explained in this manual.

Screenshots and Keys

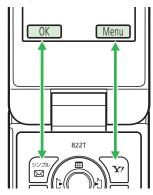
Screenshots and key graphics are simplified to facilitate explanation. Actual appearance may differ.

Japanese Functions & Services

When "(Japanese)" appears in a title, Japanese ability is required to use full range of function and service.

Softkeys

Use Softkeys to perform operations indicated at the bottom of the Display.



- Press 🗑 to select OK.
- Press 🔊 to access Option menu.
- Softkey operations vary by the current function.
- In this manual, Softkey operations are described as below.

 ⇒ (OK) / ⇒ (□) / ⇒ □

Multi Selector

The following notations are used to indicate Multi Selector operations.

Notation/Operation	Function	
Press up	Enables Active Window operations* Increases volume Moves cursor up	
Press down	Accesses Phone Book* Decreases volume Moves cursor down	
•○) Press left	Accesses Dialed* Moves cursor left	
Press right	Accesses Received* Moves cursor right	
Press center	Accesses Main Menu Confirms the selected item or performs the selected operation Acts as the camera shutter-release	

^{*} Functions accessible from Standby can be changed by modifying the Navigation Keys settings (page 2-4).

Safety Precautions

- To ensure proper usage, be sure to read the Safety Precautions thoroughly before using your handset. Always keep this manual available for future reference.
- Be sure to follow the safety information contained in the instruction manuals and indicated on the product to prevent injury to the user and other persons, as well as damage to property.
- When a child uses the handset, it is recommended that a parent or guardian reads the instruction manuals thoroughly and provides proper instructions to the child.
- The following describes the meaning of safety symbols and signal words. Be sure to understand their meanings before proceeding to read this manual.

Pictographs

Pictograph	Meaning	
<u> </u>	Indicates an imminently hazardous operation that could result in death or serious injury¹ of the user.	
Warning Indicates a potentially hazardous operation that could result in death or serious injury¹ of the user.		
A Caution	Indicates a potentially hazardous operation that could result in minor or moderate injury ² to the user or damage to property ³ .	

¹ Serious injury includes loss of sight, wounds, high temperature burns, low temperature burns (burns causing reddish areas, blistering and other damage to the skin as a result of heat exceeding the body temperature contacting your skin for a prolonged time), electric shock, fractures and poisoning requiring hospitalization or long-term medical treatment.

- 2 Injury includes wounds, burns and electric shock not requiring hospitalization or long-term medical treatment.
- 3 Damage to property includes extensive damage to homes and household property, as well as livestock and pets.

Symbols

Symbol	Meaning	
Prohibited	indicates a prohibited action. The prohibited action is indicated graphically or described in text in or near the symbol.	
Compulsory	① indicates a compulsory action that must be carried out. The compulsory action is indicated graphically or described in text in or near the symbol.	

Limitation of Liability

- SoftBank and Toshiba accept no liability whatsoever for any damages arising from natural disasters such as earthquakes. lightning, storms and floods, as well as fires through no fault of SoftBank and Toshiba, acts by third parties, other accidents, improper use by the user, whether intentionally or negligently. or use under other abnormal conditions.
- SoftBank and Toshiba accept no liability whatsoever for incidental damages arising out of the use or inability to use the product, including, but not limited to, corruption or loss of data, lost business revenue or suspension of business operations.
- SoftBank and Toshiba accept no liability whatsoever for any damages arising from improper use not conforming to the instructions in the instruction manuals.
- SoftBank and Toshiba accept no liability whatsoever for any damages arising from malfunctions caused by use in combination with connection equipment or software that is not authorized for use by SoftBank and Toshiba.
- Image data recorded with the camera, downloaded data and other data may be corrupted or lost due to malfunction. repair or other improper handling of the product. SoftBank and Toshiba accept no liability whatsoever for the restoration of corrupted or lost data, as well as any damages or lost revenue and profits.
- SoftBank and Toshiba accept no liability whatsoever for corruption or loss of stored data resulting from failures or malfunctions of the product, regardless of the cause. Be sure to keep a separate memo of important data to limit damage caused by data corruption or loss to a minimum.

⚠ Danger



Do not disassemble, modify or repair the handset, battery, Desktop Cradle, AC Charger (sold separately), In-Car Charger (sold separately) or Stereo Earphone-Microphone (sold separately)

Doing so may cause overheating, rupturing, fire, electric shock, injury or malfunction. Modification of the handset is prohibited by Japanese Radio Law. For repair, contact your nearest SoftBank Shop or SoftBank Customer Assistance (page 13-45).



Do not dispose of the handset, battery, Desktop Cradle, AC Charger (sold separately), In-Car Charger (sold separately) and Stereo Earphone-Microphone (sold separately) in a fire or expose them to heat If they are exposed to water, do not dry them artificially in heating equipment (microwave oven, etc.) Doing so may cause overheating, rupturing, fire or malfunction.



Do not charge, use or leave the handset, battery. Desktop Cradle, AC Charger (sold separately), In-Car No flames Charger (sold separately) or Stereo Earphone-Microphone (sold separately) in hot places such as near a fire or heater

Doing so may cause overheating, rupturing, fire or malfunction.

A Danger



Do not expose the inside of the handset, battery, Desktop Cradle, AC Charger (sold separately), In-Car Charger (sold separately) and Stereo Earphone-Microphone (sold separately) to fluids such as water, perspiration or seawater

Do not leave the battery, Desktop Cradle, AC Charger (sold separately), In-Car Charger (sold separately) and Stereo Earphone-Microphone (sold separately) outdoors, in a bathroom or wherever water or any other fluid is used

Do not place them near cups, vases or other containers of fluids

Doing so may cause overheating, rupturing, fire, electric shock or malfunction. If they are dropped accidentally in water or any other fluid, immediately turn off the power and remove the battery. If they are exposed to fluids such as water during charging, remove the power plug from the outlet immediately. Do not charge the wet battery. If the battery gets wet, contact your nearest SoftBank Shop or SoftBank Customer Assistance (page 13-45).



Do not use excessive force when inserting the battery into the handset or connecting the handset to the Desktop Cradle, AC Charger (sold separately) or In-Car Charger (sold separately)

Do not connect any cords with reverse polarity

Doing so may cause the battery to leak, rupture, overheat or catch fire, as well as cause electric shock or malfunction.



Do not touch the battery terminal (metal parts) with any metal objects (necklace, hairpin, etc.)

Doing so may cause the battery to overheat, rupture or catch fire, as well as the metal object to overheat.



Do not use a battery other than one supplied with or designated for the handset

Compulsory Do not use the battery for any other handset

Doing so may cause overheating, rupturing, fire or malfunction.



Use the Desktop Cradle, AC Charger (sold separately) and In-Car Charger (sold separately) designated for the Compulsory handset to charge the battery

> Use the Desktop Cradle, AC Charger (sold separately) and In-Car Charger (sold separately) only for charging the handset's battery

Failing to do so may cause overheating, rupturing, fire or malfunction.



If electrolyte fluid leaking from the battery comes into contact with your skin or clothes, wash it immediately with clean water as this may hurt your body

And if it gets into your eyes, do not rub them, and have them immediately treated by an ophthalmologist after washing them with clean water

If the fluid sticks to the equipment, wipe it out without touching it directly

If the fluid is left as it is, your skin may get irritated or there may be fear of losing your sight.



Do not use the handset while driving Do not make or receive a call and do not use other functions (messaging, game, camera, video, music, Mobile Light, etc.)

Doing so may cause a traffic accident. Use of the handset while driving is prohibited by law. Before using the handset, stop the vehicle in a safe area where parking is permitted.



Be sure to turn off your SoftBank handset before entering places such as gas stations where flammable Compulsory gases may be produced

> Also do not charge the handset in those places The gases may be ignited.



Do not swing the handset by its strap, USB cable (sold separately), Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable (sold separately) or Stereo Earphone-Microphone (sold separately)

Doing so may cause an injury, accident or damage.



Turn off the handset while you are near any precision electronic equipment

Compulsory Radio waves may adversely affect the operation of electronic equipment. Examples of such equipment: medical electronic equipment such as cardiac pacemakers and hearing aids or fire alarms and automatic doors. If you use medical electronic equipment, consult with the equipment manufacturer or distributor about the influence of radio waves.



Remove the power plug from the outlet if the AC Charger (sold separately) is not to be used for a long period of time or before cleaning

Failing to do so may cause an electric shock, fire or malfunction.



Turn off the handset wherever its use is prohibited such as on an aircraft

Compulsory Failing to do so may adversely affect the operation of electronic equipment and cause an accident.

Use of the handset on an aircraft is prohibited by law.



Check your surroundings to confirm that it is safe to make/receive calls, send/receive messages, take pictures or record videos

Failing to do so may cause you to trip over or cause a traffic accident



Do not use the handset with any power voltage other than the specified voltage

Compulsory Doing so may cause a fire. The power voltages are 100 to 240 V AC for the AC Charger (sold separately) and 12 or 24 V DC (for a negative ground car only) for the In-Car Charger (sold separately).



Wipe away any dust on the plug of the AC Charger (sold separately) with a dry cloth after removing the Compulsory plug from the outlet

Dust on the plug or outlet may cause a fire.



Follow the instructions below when installing and wiring in-vehicle devices

- Make sure that devices do not interfere with driving and safety equipment such as airbags
- Make sure that wires are not caught in seatbelt buckles, doors or other moving parts

Any wire caught around a foot, brake pedal, accelerator pedal, etc. may interfere with driving and cause a traffic accident. If any part of an in-vehicle device drops onto the floor, it may startle you into abrupt braking or steering, leading to a traffic accident.



When thunder is heard outside, stop using the handset immediately

Turn off the handset and do not touch it

Failing to do so may attract lightning and cause electric shock. When thunder is heard, stop using the handset and move to a safe place such as inside a building.



If the battery fails to charge in the specified time, stop charging immediately

Compulsory Failing to do so may cause overheating, rupturing or fire. Contact your nearest SoftBank Shop or SoftBank Customer Assistance (page 13-45).



When inserting the plug of the AC Charger (sold separately) into an AC household outlet, make sure Compulsory that a metal strap or any other metal object does not

touch the plug

Failing to do so may cause electric shock, short circuit or fire.



If something unusual happens to the handset, battery, Desktop Cradle, AC Charger (sold separately) or In-Car Charger (sold separately); for example, it emits smoke or an unusual odor or is damaged, perform the following steps immediately

- If the battery is charging, unplug the AC Charger (sold separately) from the AC household outlet or unplug the In-Car Charger (sold separately) from the cigarette lighter socket.
- 2. Make sure that the handset is not hot, then turn it off and remove the battery.

Failing to do so and continuing use (charging) may cause the battery to overheat, rupture or catch fire or the handset to overheat. If something unusual happens, contact your nearest SoftBank Shop or SoftBank Customer Assistance (page 13-45).



Do not drop the handset or battery or subject it to excessive shock

Prohibited

ited Doing so may cause overheating, rupturing, fire or malfunction.



Do not sit down with the handset in your trousers pocket

Prohibite

Excess weight may damage the Display, battery or other parts resulting in overheating, fire or injury.



If the handset is used near an implanted cardiac pacemaker, defibrillator or other electronic medical ory equipment, radio waves may interfere with such a device or equipment

Observe the following guidelines

- If you have an implanted cardiac pacemaker or defibrillator, carry and use the handset at a distance of at least 22 centimeters away from the implanted device.
- Turn off the handset in crowded places such as packed trains because a person with an implanted cardiac pacemaker or defibrillator may be nearby. Radio waves can interfere with the operation of a cardiac pacemaker or other medical device.
- 3. Follow the precautions below in medical institutions.
 - Do not bring the handset into an operating room, intensive care unit or coronary care unit.
 - · Turn off the handset in a hospital ward.
 - Turn off the handset in a lobby or other location close to medical equipment.
 - Observe the instructions of individual medical institutions and do not use the handset in or bring it into prohibited areas.

4. When using electronic medical devices other than an implanted cardiac pacemaker or defibrillator outside of medical institutions (such as at home), consult with the individual medical device manufacturer about the possible influence of radio waves.

The above information conforms to "The Guidelines on Use of Mobile Phones and Other Devices to Prevent Electromagnetic Wave Interference with Electronic Medical Equipment" (Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference Japan), as well as refers to "The Investigative Research Report on the Influence of Electromagnetic Waves on Medical Equipment" (Association of Radio Industries and Businesses, March 2001).



Do not use the AC Charger (sold separately) with any power supply other than a 100 to 240 V AC household power supply

Doing so may result in a fire, as well as cause the charger to overheat, catch fire or malfunction.



Do not place the handset in water for long periods of time or expose it to a high-pressure water stream in excess of that specified by the standard (equivalent to IPX5/IPX7)

The handset is not designed to withstand high water pressure. Damage caused by placing the handset in water for long periods of time or exposing it to water in excess of that specified by the standard (equivalent to IPX5/IPX7) is not covered by the warranty and cannot be repaired. If water or other liquid gets on the handset, wipe it off with a clean dry cloth. Using the wet handset may cause overheating, fire, electric shock or malfunction.



Use the handset at an ambient temperature of 5 to 40°C (limiting to temporary usage in bathrooms over 36°C) and a humidity of 35 to 90 %

If the repair staff determines that malfunctions were caused by exposure to extreme environments outside this range, the malfunctions will not be covered by the warranty and cannot be repaired.

⚠ Caution



Do not use or leave the handset or battery in places where it will be exposed to direct sunlight or in hot places such as inside a car in the sun

Doing so may cause overheating, fire or malfunction.



Keep the handset, battery, battery cover key, Desktop Cradle, AC Charger (sold separately) and In-Car Charger (sold separately) away from infants and small children

Failing to do so may result in the battery, battery cover key or memory card being accidentally swallowed or cause an injury.



Make sure that the terminals (metal parts) of the Desktop Cradle, AC Charger (sold separately) and In-Car Charger (sold separately) do not come into contact with wires or other metal objects

Failing to do so may cause overheating or burns.



Do not pull the cord when unplugging the AC Charger (sold separately) or In-Car Charger (sold separately) from an AC household outlet or socket

Damage to the cord may cause electric shock, overheating or fire. Hold the plug when unplugging the AC Charger (sold separately) or In-Car Charger (sold separately).



Do not pull, bend with excessive force or twist the cords of the AC Charger (sold separately) and In-Car Charger

Do not damage or modify them
Do not place objects on them
Do not apply heat and keep them away from heaters
Damage to a cord may cause electric shock, overheating or fire.



Do not use the battery, Desktop Cradle, AC Charger (sold separately), In-Car Charger (sold separately) or Stereo Earphone-Microphone (sold separately) with wet hands

Doing so may cause electric shock or malfunction.



Keep magnetic cards away from the handset and make sure that a magnetic card is not trapped when closing the handset

Failing to do so may cause the magnetic data on a cash card, credit card, telephone card or floppy disk to be lost.



Do not use the handset in a vehicle if it affects invehicle electronic devices

Use of the handset in some types of vehicles may, in some rare cases, affect in-vehicle electronic devices and interfere with safe driving.

↑ Caution



Do not use the handset, battery, Desktop Cradle, AC Charger (sold separately), In-Car Charger (sold separately) or Stereo Earphone-Microphone (sold separately) in extremely damp environments

Doing so may cause electric shock. Also, dampness resulting from sweat while carrying the handset against your body may cause a malfunction. If the repair staff determines that malfunctions were caused by exposure to water or dampness, the malfunctions will not be covered by the warranty and cannot be repaired.



Cover the External Device Port with its cover when using the handset

Compulsory Using the handset without the cover in place may allow dust or water to get inside and cause a malfunction.



Do not place the handset on an unstable or unlevel surface

Doing so may result in the handset falling and causing injury or malfunction. Be particularly careful when vibration is set.



Do not dispose of the used battery with ordinary garbage

Insulate the terminal with tape and then dispose of the used battery separately from ordinary garbage or take it to your nearest SoftBank Shop. Be sure to observe local regulations on the separate collection of used batteries, wherever applicable.



Do not use the In-Car Charger (sold separately) when the car engine is not running

Doing so may result in a flat battery.



If the fuse for the In-Car Charger (sold separately) blows, replace it with a designated fuse

Compulsory Replacing the fuse with other than a designated fuse may cause overheating and fire.

> For details on replacing the fuse, refer to the instruction manual of the In-Car Charger (sold separately).

Be careful not to trap your fingers or objects when closing the handset and not to trap your fingers in the hinge when opening the handset

Failing to do so may cause injury or damage to the LCD Display.

Be sure the battery cover lock is in the locked position If it is not in the locked position water may get in and cause a Compulsory malfunction.

XX



If your skin becomes irritated, immediately stop using the handset and consult with a dermatologist
The following materials and surface treatments have been used for the handset. Some of these materials may cause itching, irritation, eczema, etc. in Compulsory some rare cases depending on the individual's constitution and physical condition.

Part	Material (Surface Treatment)
Outer housing (Display side)	PC resin (UV cured acrylic coating)
Outer housing (External Display side)	PC resin (UV cured acrylic coating)
Outer housing (keypad side, battery cover side)	PC resin (UV cured acrylic coating)
Display panel	Tempered glass with polyester film (UV cured acrylic processing)
External Display panel	Acrylic resin (UV cured acrylic ink processing)
Screw covers (Display side)	Polyester resin (UV cured acrylic ink processing)
Screw covers (Main Camera side)	PC resin (UV cured acrylic coating)
Center Key, Multi Selector	Aluminum-evaporated PC resin (UV cured acrylic coating)
Keypad	Polyester resin (UV cured acrylic ink processing)
Side key	PC resin (UV cured acrylic coating)
Main Camera panel, Infrared Port, Mobile Light panel, Sub Camera panel	Acrylic resin
Speaker panel	Polyester resin (UV cured acrylic ink processing)
Battery cover lock	PC resin (UV cured acrylic coating)
External Device Port cover	Elastomer resin, PC resin (UV cured acrylic coating)
Charging Terminal	Stainless steel (gold plating, nickel undercoat)
Clearance retainer	Urethane resin
Screws	Steel (nickel coating)



Before using the handset, make sure that no metal objects (such as pins) are stuck to the Earpiece or Compulsory Speaker

> Failing to do so may result in a metal object causing an ear or hand injury, etc.



If you have a weak heart, be careful with the call vibration and ringtone volume settings

Compulsory Failing to do so may startle you and may be harmful to your heart.



Do not use the Mobile Light for purposes other than taking pictures, recording videos or lighting Do not use Twinkle Light for any other purpose than intended

Doing so may harm the eyes and cause impaired vision or other injury.



Make sure things like paper, cloth and bedding are not placed on the handset during a video call or while charging using the USB cable (sold separately), In-Car Charger (sold separately), AC Charger (sold separately), etc.

Failing to do so may cause overheating, fire, burns or malfunction.



Do not turn the volume up too high while using Stereo Earphone-Microphone (sold separately)

Do not use Stereo Earphone-Microphone (sold separately) continuously for long periods of time

Exposure to high sound levels may impair hearing and prolonged use may cause hearing defect regardless of the volume level. Sound leakage may annoy other people and surrounding sounds may not be heard clearly resulting in an accident.



Do not insert objects other than the memory card into the Memory Card Slot

Doing so may cause fire, overheating, electric shock or malfunction.



Keep your face away from the Memory Card Slot when inserting or removing the memory card Keep the memory card out of the reach of small children

If the memory card is let go of suddenly, it may fly out and hit your face resulting in injury.



Do not subject the memory card to vibration or shock or turn off the handset while data is being written to or read from the memory card

Doing so may cause data loss or malfunction.

⚠ Caution



Use only the memory card supported by the handset Failing to do so may cause data loss or malfunction.

The handset supports memory cards with a storage capacity of up to 2 GB (as of January 2008).



Do not let children use cables such as USB cable (sold separately), Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable (sold separately) and Stereo Earphone-Microphone (sold separately) unsupervised and keep cables out of infant's reach

An injury may be caused if, for instance, the cable is wrapped around a neck



Do not point the infrared beam at anyone's eye during infrared communication

Prohibited Doing so may cause eye damage.



Do not use the Mobile Light or Twinkle Light close to eyes

Prohibited

Doing so may cause eye damage. Be especially careful not to take pictures or record videos with the Mobile Light too close to the eyes of infants.



Do not use excessive force when inserting or removing the USIM Card

Doing so may cause a malfunction. Be careful not to injure a hand or finger when removing the card.

O

Use only a USIM Card designated for the handset

Failing to do so may cause data loss or malfunction.

General Notes

Using Your Handset

- The handset employs radio waves. Signals may be disrupted even within service areas if you are indoors, underground, inside a tunnel or inside a vehicle. If you move to a location with poor signal reception, a call may be suddenly cut off.
- When using the handset in public places, take care not to annoy other people around you. Use of the handset is prohibited in some public places such as in theaters or on buses and trains.
- The handset is a radio transceiver under Japanese Radio Law.
 You may be requested to submit the handset for inspection based on this law.
- Use of the handset near a landline phone, TV or radio may affect the image and sound quality of the equipment.
- The handset employs a digital system to maintain a high level of communication quality even at very low signal levels. However, calls may be suddenly cut off when the signal strength becomes too weak.
- The digital system provides a high level of privacy protection. However, the possibility of someone eavesdropping on your conversation cannot be ruled out as long as radio waves are used.
- The handset is exclusively for use in Japan. It cannot be used outside Japan.
- Data stored on the handset may be corrupted or lost on the following occasions.
 - The handset is used improperly.
 - The handset is exposed to static electricity or electric noise.
 - The handset is turned off during operation.
 - The battery is completely discharged.
 - The handset malfunctions or is sent for repairs.

- SoftBank and Toshiba accept no liability whatsoever for the corruption or loss of stored data. Be sure to keep a separate memo of important data to limit damage caused by data corruption or loss to a minimum.
- Be sure to charge the battery before using the handset for the first time or if the handset has not been used for a long time.
 When the battery is stored for a long time, it discharges over time even if it is not used.
- Before using a memory card, read the instruction manual of the memory card thoroughly to ensure safe and proper operation.
- When the handset is used for extended periods of time, especially in high temperature conditions, the handset surface could become hot. Please use caution when touching the handset under such conditions.
- When certain items are taken out of the country, documentation may be required to certify that the export of the items is not controlled, prohibited, or restricted by the Export Trade Control Order and Foreign Exchange Order. Basically, no such documentation is required if you take the handset out of the country and bring it back for the purpose of personal use when going on vacations or short business trips. In some cases, however, an export permit may be required if the handset is to be used by or transferred to anyone else.

Furthermore, a US government export permit may be required when taking the handset to countries for which the US government has imposed export restrictions (Cuba, North Korea, Iran, Sudan, Syria).

For details on export laws, regulations and procedures, refer to the Web page of the Security Export Control Policy Division of the Ministry of Economy, Trade and Industry.

• If you use a hearing aid, handset usage may interfere with hearing aid performance. If there is any interference, consult with the manufacturer or distributor of the hearing aid.

Inside Vehicles

- Do not use the handset while driving. Use of the handset while driving is prohibited by law.
 - Talking on the handset using Stereo Earphone-Microphone (sold separately) while driving may be subject to penalties in some prefectures.
- Before using the handset, stop the vehicle in a safe area where parking or stopping is permitted.

Aboard Aircraft

• Do not use the handset on an aircraft. Do not turn the handset on while you are on the aircraft. Use of the handset on an aircraft is prohibited by law.

Handling Basics

- Be sure to close the External Device Port cover tightly and attach and lock the battery cover before using the handset to assure its waterproof quality (equivalent to IPX5/IPX7). However, this does not guarantee proper operation of the handset in every possible usage condition. Do not allow water to get inside the handset or on the battery, Desktop Cradle and optional items. Do not insert/remove the battery or attach/remove the External Device Port cover or the battery cover in the rain or with the handset wet. If moisture gets inside the handset, it could cause corrosion. If inspection determines this kind of moisture caused the malfunction, the repairs will not be covered by the warranty.
- Avoid extremely hot, cold or damp environments.
 Use the handset at an ambient temperature of 5 to 40°C (limiting to temporary usage in bathrooms over 36°C) and a humidity of 35 to 90 %.
- Do not use the handset under direct sunlight or in dusty places.

- The handset is not designed to withstand high water pressure.
 Do not subject the handset to high water pressure, submerge it in water or put it in a bath.
- Do not splash the handset with or put it in any fluids other than fresh water or tap water at room temperature (5 to 35°C) (such as warm water, seawater, detergent, chemicals, sweat, etc.).
- Do not put the handset in boiling water, use it in a sauna or expose it to hot air (such as a hairdryer). The handset is not designed to withstand high temperatures.
- The rubber seals of the External Device Port cover and battery cover are important components for maintaining the handset's waterproofness. Do not remove or damage them.
- The charging devices (Desktop Cradle, AC Charger (sold separately), In-Car Charger (sold separately)), Stereo Earphone-Microphone (sold separately) and Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable (sold separately) are not waterproof. Do not use them in the rain or places where they might get wet. Also, do not get them wet when they are attached to the handset.
- Moisture (condensation) may form inside the handset in the following situations. This condensation may corrode the inside of the handset and cause malfunctions.
 - If you move the handset from a cold outside environment to a warm room.
 - If you use the handset in an extremely humid place.
- If you leave the handset near the outlet of an air conditioner.
- Do not let water or dirt get on the External Device Port. Malfunction may result.
- Do not jab the microphone, earpiece or speaker with any sharp objects. Doing so may reduce the handset's waterproofness.
- If the handset gets wet, wipe it completely with a soft dry cloth. If any water is remaining, it may leak from the handset.

- Be sure to check the following points before and after charging the battery.
 - Do not charge the battery if the handset is wet. Place the handset in the Desktop Cradle or open the External Device Port cover after draining water and wiping the handset with a soft dry cloth.
 - If you charge the battery with the External Device Port cover open, be sure to tightly close the cover when charging is finished. We recommend using the Desktop Cradle to charge the battery to prevent water from getting in through the External Device Port.
- Do not touch the surface of the memory card terminal, and do not allow it to get wet or dirty.
- Do not allow any liquids, metal items or combustible materials into the Memory Card Slot. Doing so may cause fire, electric shock or malfunction.
- Do not drop the handset or subject it to excessive shock.
- To clean the handset, wipe it with a dry soft cloth. Do not use alcohol, thinner, benzene or other solvents. Doing so may cause discoloration and remove the printed logo.
- Do not remove the battery while handset power is on to avoid malfunction.
- If the battery has been removed from the handset or the handset has not been charged for a long time, stored data and settings may be lost or altered. SoftBank and Toshiba accept no liability whatsoever for any damage or loss resulting from such negligence.
- The battery is a consumable item employing lithium ions. Replace the battery with a new one if the operation time becomes extremely short after it is fully charged. Buy a new battery designated for the handset.

 Do not dispose of batteries with municipal waste. Insulate the terminal with tape or place the battery in a plastic bag and take to the nearest SoftBank Shop or recycling center. Be sure to observe local regulations on battery disposal.



- Be sure to use the tab marked with
 when removing the battery. Removing the battery in any other way may damage the terminals.
- Some handset display pixels may be missing or remain lit. This is not a defect or malfunction. If the Display is left on for a long period of time, pictures may be permanently burned into it.
- Make sure Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable (sold separately) or Stereo Earphone-Microphone (sold separately) is securely plugged into Earphone Microphone Jack. Failing to do so may generate noise on the other party's phone during calls.
- Do not turn the volume up too high while using Stereo Earphone-Microphone (sold separately). Exposure to high sound levels may impair hearing and prolonged use may cause hearing damage regardless of the volume level. Sound leakage may annoy other people and surrounding sounds may not be heard clearly when walking, resulting in an accident.
- When External Device Port is not in use, make sure to replace the cover. Otherwise dust or water may enter the handset causing handset malfunction.
- Hold the plug and do not pull the cord when unplugging Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable (sold separately) or Stereo Earphone-Microphone (sold separately). Pulling the cord may cause damage or malfunction.

- The communication antenna of the handset is built into the body and does not protrude. Signal sensitivity may be reduced by touching/covering Internal Antenna area (page 1-3). Do not cover this area by affixing stickers, or any other items. Doing so may prevent you from making/receiving calls, sending/receiving messages or accessing the Web.
- When you replace the handset or send it for repair, messages and other data stored in the handset cannot be transferred to another handset.
- Do not drop the USIM Card or subject it to excessive shock. Doing so may cause a malfunction.
- Do not bend the USIM Card or place a heavy object on it. Doing so may cause a malfunction.
- Do not allow the USIM Card to get wet or leave it in places of high humidity. Doing so may cause a malfunction.
- Do not use or leave the USIM Card in hot places such as near a fire or heater. Doing so may cause a malfunction.
- Avoid storing the USIM Card in direct sunlight or hot and humid places. Failing to do so may cause a malfunction.
- Keep the USIM Card out of infants' reach. Failing to do so may result in the USIM Card being accidentally swallowed or cause an injury.
- Before using the USIM Card, read the instruction manual of the USIM Card thoroughly to ensure safe and proper operation.

Functional Limitations

- After handset upgrade or subscription cancellation, the following functions become unavailable on the handset:
 - Camera
 - Media Player
 - S! Appli
- Above functions may become unavailable after long periods of not using the handset. Contact your nearest SoftBank Shop or contact SoftBank General Information (page 13-45).

Mobile Camera

- Be sure to observe proper etiquette when using the camera.
- Do not expose the camera lens to direct sunlight. Concentrated sunlight through the lens may cause the handset to malfunction.
- Be sure to try taking and previewing pictures before using the camera on important occasions like wedding ceremonies.
- Do not commercially use or transfer pictures taken with the camera without the permission of the copyright holder (photographer), except for personal use.
- Do not use the camera in locations where taking photos and recording videos are prohibited.

Mobile Light and Twinkle Light

- Do not use the Mobile Light or Twinkle Light in hot, cold or extremely humid places. Doing so may shorten their life.
- The Mobile Light and Twinkle Light have a limited life. Repeated use will decrease the light intensity.

General Notes

Copyrights

• Copyrighted materials, such as music, images, computer programs and databases, and their respective holders are protected by copyright laws. Duplication of copyrighted materials is permitted only for individual or home use. Making copies (including data conversion), modifications, transfers or network distributions of copies for purposes other than stated above without proper authorization constitutes an infringement of copyrights and moral rights, potentially resulting in claims for reparations or criminal punishment. If you use the handset to make copies, observe the copyright laws. Furthermore, recording materials using the camera is also subject to the same laws.

Right of Portrait

• Portrait right is the right of an individual to refuse to be photographed by others and protects from the unauthorized publication or use of an individual's photograph by others. Right of personality is a portrait right applicable to all citizens and right of publicity is a portrait right (property right) designed to protect celebrities' interests. Be careful when taking pictures with the handset camera. Photographing, publicizing and distributing photographs of citizens and celebrities without permission are illegal.

Waterproofing Precautions

Waterproofing Properties

per minute from any direction.

- If the External Device Port cover is tightly closed and the battery cover is locked, the handset has a waterproof rating equivalent to IPX5 (JIS IP)*1 and IPX7 (JIS IP)*2 (based on in-house testing).
 - *1 IPX5 equivalent (JIS Ingress Protection Code)
 The handset will maintain its operability even if it is sprayed with water from a 6.3 mm diameter nozzle at a distance of 3 meters for more than three minutes at a rate of 12.5 liters

*2 İPX7 equivalent (JIS İngress Protection Code)

The inside of the handset will remain dry and it will maintain its operability even if it is submerged in a tank of still tap water at room temperature to a depth of 1 meter for approximately 30 minutes.

However, this does not guarantee proper operation of the handset in every possible condition during actual use. Malfunctions determined to be caused by misuse by the customer are not covered by the warranty.

Guidelines For Usage

- In the rain
 - Make calls with wet hands and without an umbrella.
 Moderately heavy rain (up to 20 mm rainfall per hour)
 - Do not open Port/battery covers if handset is exposed to rain, water drops, or your hands are wet.



In the bathroom

- You may handle handset with wet hands but do not immerse in bathwater.
- Do not immerse the handset in hot spring water, soap water, detergent water or water with bath salts.
- Do not use the handset underwater. Doing so may damage your handset.
- You may experience poor signal reception depending on the position of the bathroom.
- Extreme changes in temperature may produce condensation. Wait until the handset has reached room temperature before bringing it from a cold environment into a warm bathroom.
- If condensation forms inside the External Display panel, leave the handset in a warm place until the condensation evaporates.
- Do not use handset in bathroom for extended periods.
- Do not immerse or drop the handset into a bathtub.
- Do not splash hot water onto the handset. The handset is not designed to withstand high temperatures.
- Use the handset at an ambient temperature of 5 to 40°C (limiting to temporary usage in bathrooms over 36°C) and a humidity of 35 to 90 %.
- Do not bring the Desktop Cradle into the bathroom.
- Do not place handset under pouring water from faucet or shower. Handset is not designed to withstand high water pressure.





Waterproofing Precautions

In the kitchen

- Keep handset away from soap suds, detergents, spices, beverages or any other liquids except tap water.
- Do not immerse the handset in or splash it with hot or cold water. The handset is not designed to withstand high temperatures.



- Do not expose the handset to strong running water (over 6 liters/minute).
- Do not place the handset in extremely hot or cold places, such as near a stove or in a refrigerator.

By the pool

- Do not immerse or drop the handset into a swimming pool.
- Do not use the handset underwater. A malfunction may result.
 If water from a swimming pool gets on the
 - handset, rinse it off with a mild flow of water (up to 6 liters/minute of room-temperature (5 to 35°C) tap water). Close and lock the battery cover and hold the External Device Port cover so it does not open and wash the handset with your hands. Do not use any brushes or sponges.
- Do not use or leave the handset exposed to direct sunlight or in hot places.
- The handset can maintain its waterproofness when the External Device Port cover and battery cover are tightly closed.

Washing Handset

• You can wash the handset under a mild flow of water (up to 6 liters/minute of room-temperature (5 to 35°C) tap water) holding it about 10 cm from the faucet or showerhead. Do not spray the handset with high-pressure water because it is not designed to withstand



high water pressure. Also, do not submerge the handset in water for extended periods of time.

 Attach and lock the battery cover, and holding the External Device Port cover so it does not open, wash the handset with your hands. Do not use any brushes or sponges.

Proper Usage

- Make sure that the External Device Port cover and battery cover are not partially open when attaching the covers.
- Firmly close the External Device Port cover and securely lock the battery cover.
 - Small particles (strand of hair, grain of sand, fine fiber, etc.) caught between the battery cover and handset may cause water leaks.
- Do not use handset underwater (Use of handset includes opening/closing handset and key operations).
- Do not leave the handset in humid areas for an extended period of time (ie: bathroom, kitchen, etc.). The handset is not moisture-proof.
- The handset is only waterproof against fresh water and tap water at room temperature (5 to 35°C).
 Keep away from any other liquids/substances including sand

and mud (see examples below).

Examples: soap water, detergent water, water with bath salts, seawater, pool water, hot spring water, boiling water, chemicals, sweat, sand, mud, etc.

Rubber Seals

Rubber seals on the External Device Port cover/battery cover (inner side) protect handset from water. Note the following precautions.

- Do not remove or damage them.
- Do not pinch the seals when closing the covers. Doing so could damage seals and waterproof feature may become ineffective.
- Waterproof feature may fail if liquids other than fresh water or tap water at room temperature (5 to 35°C) (warm water, seawater, detergent, chemicals, sweat, etc.) come in contact with handset.
- Do not open or close covers while wearing gloves. Keep covers clean. Just a small particle (strand of hair, grain of sand, fine fiber, etc.) on the seal can cause water leaks. Remove even the smallest amount of dirt with a clean dry cloth.
- Do not insert sharp objects into the gaps around covers. Doing so may damage the seals and cause a water leak.
- We recommend replacing the rubber seals every two years, even if it appears unnecessary. For information about replacing the rubber seals, contact your nearest SoftBank Shop or SoftBank General Information (page 13-45).

If Seawater, Detergent, Sand or Mud Gets on Your Handset

If anything other than water (seawater, detergent, sand, mud, etc.) gets on the handset, quickly rinse it off with water.

- You can wash the handset under a mild flow of water (up to 6 liters/minute of room-temperature (5 to 35°C) tap water) holding it about 10 cm from the faucet or showerhead.
- Close and lock the battery cover and wash the handset with your hands holding the External Device Port cover so it does not open. Do not use any brushes or sponges.
- Do not wash the handset in a washing machine or ultrasound bath.

If the Handset Gets Wet

- If the handset gets wet, drain water and wipe the handset with a clean dry cloth.*
 - Do not leave the handset with water on it, as doing so may cause a short circuit in the External Device Port.
 - * In cold climates, water on the handset may turn to frost. Using handset with frost may cause a malfunction. Do not leave handset in the cold without wiping off water.
- Do not leave the handset with water on it. Shake the handset to remove any water that is inside the keypad and hinge part, which are constructed to allow water in (be careful not to drop the handset when doing this). Immediately wipe off any remaining water with a clean dry cloth.
- If water or snow gets on the handset, wipe it off with a clean dry cloth. Note that any water that you do not wipe off or that remains in the gaps may get your cloths or bag wet.

Draining Water from the Handset

Water may seep in between keys and hinge. If water remains inside handset, earpiece/speaker volume may be compromised and water may spill onto your clothes, bag, etc. Remove water as follows:

1 Wipe any water off of the handset with a clean dry cloth.

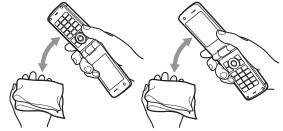


2 Hold handset firmly (as shown below) and shake approximately 20 times, until water stops coming out. Turn handset around (as pictured) and repeat.

Grip handset firmly to prevent dropping it.



3 Pat handset with a dry cloth to remove any water remaining in microphone, earpiece, speaker, keypad, hinge, etc.



4 Place handset on a dry towel or cloth and let it dry at room temperature (approximately 30 minutes).

Some water may remain on the handset even after this procedure. Do not place the handset near anything that should not get wet. Take care not to touch your clothes or bag with wet handset.

Notes on Charging the Battery

- The battery, Desktop Cradle and optional items are not waterproof. Be sure to check the following points before and after charging the battery.
 - If you are charging the battery after the handset has been wet, drain water and wipe the handset with a clean dry cloth before placing it in the Desktop Cradle or opening External Device Port cover.
 - If you charge the battery with External Device Port cover open, be sure to tightly close the cover when charging is finished. We recommend using the Desktop Cradle to charge the battery to prevent water from getting into the External Device Port.
 - Never charge the battery if the handset is wet. Doing so may cause electric shock or short circuit resulting in a fire or malfunction.
 - Do not touch the Desktop Cradle, AC Charger (sold separately) or In-Car Charger (sold separately) with wet hands. Doing so may cause electric shock.
 - Do not let water splash on the Desktop Cradle, AC Charger (sold separately) and In-Car Charger (sold separately) while using them. Doing so may cause a fire or electric shock.
 - Do not use the Desktop Cradle or AC Charger (sold separately) near water, such as in a bathroom, shower, kitchen or washroom. Doing so may cause a fire or electric shock.

Other Precautions

- Never immerse the handset in hot spring water, soap water, detergent water or water with bath salts in it, etc. Also, do not use the handset underwater or keep it immersed in water for long periods of time. Doing so may cause a malfunction.
- Do not attach/remove the battery cover or open/close the External Device Port cover while the handset or your hands are wet.
- Heat resistance
- Do not use handset in places where boiling water may splash on it, in saunas or near hot air (ie: hairdryer). Handset is not designed to withstand high temperatures.
- Do not jab the microphone, earpiece or speaker with cotton swabs or any sharp objects. Doing so may reduce waterproof quality.
- The handset does not float in water.
- Do not drop the handset or subject it to excessive shock. Doing so may damage the handset's waterproofness.
- Use the handset at an ambient temperature of 5 to 40°C (limiting to temporary usage in bathrooms over 36°C) and a humidity of 35 to 90 %. Using the handset in an extremely hot or cold place that is outside the range may damage the handset's waterproofness.
- If the battery cover is damaged, replace it. Water may get inside the handset through the damaged area and cause electric shock or corrode the battery.
- If water or any other liquid gets on the handset while the External Device Port cover or battery cover is open, the liquid may get inside the handset and cause electric shock or malfunction. If this happens, do not use the handset. After turning the power off and removing the battery, contact your nearest SoftBank shop or SoftBank General Information (page 13-45).

Waterproofing Precautions

- Do not leave water on the microphone, earpiece or speaker. Doing so may reduce call quality.
 Avoid placing handset directly on sand. Sand may enter the earpiece or speaker affecting handset volume.

End User License Agreement

TOSHIBA CORPORATION

IMPORTANT NOTE: PLEASE READ BEFORE USING YOUR HANDSET

BY ATTEMPTING TO USE ANY SOFTWARE ON THE SUPPLIED HANDSET THIS CONSTITUTES YOUR ACCEPTANCE OF THESE EULA TERMS. IF YOU REJECT OR DO NOT AGREE WITH ALL THE TERMS OF THIS EULA, PLEASE DO NOT ATTEMPT TO ACCESS OR USE THE SUPPLIED SOFTWARE.

End User License Agreement

This End User License Agreement ("EULA") is a legal agreement between you (as the user) and TOSHIBA CORPORATION ("Toshiba") with regard to the copyrighted software as installed in a Toshiba 3G handset supplied to you (the "Handset"). Use or disposal of any software installed in the Handset and related documentations (the "Software") will constitute your acceptance of these terms, unless separate terms are provided by the Software supplier on the Handset, in which case certain additional or different terms may apply. If you do not agree with the terms of this EULA, do not use or dispose the Software.

1. <u>License Grant</u>. Toshiba grants to you a personal, non-transferable and non-exclusive right to use the Software as set out in this EULA. Modifying, adapting, translating, renting, copying, making available, transferring or assigning all or part of the Software, or any rights granted hereunder, to any other persons and removing any proprietary notices, labels or marks from the Software is strictly prohibited, except as expressly permitted in this EULA. Furthermore, you hereby agree not to create derivative works based on the Software.

- 2. Copyright. The Software is licensed, not sold. You acknowledge that no title to the intellectual property in the Software is or will be transferred to you. You further acknowledge that title and full ownership rights to the Software will remain the exclusive property of Toshiba, Toshiba's affiliates, and/or their suppliers, and you will not acquire any rights to the Software, except as expressly set out in this EULA. You may keep a back-up copy of the Software only so far as necessary for its lawful use. All copies of the Software must contain the same proprietary notices as contained in or on the Software and are subject to the terms of this EULA. All rights not expressly granted under this EULA are reserved to Toshiba, Toshiba's affiliates and/or their suppliers.
- 3. Reverse Engineering. You agree that you will not attempt, and if you are a business organization, you will use your best efforts to prevent your employees, servants and contractors from attempting to reverse engineer, decompile, modify, translate or disassemble the Software in whole or in part except to the extent that such actions cannot be excluded by mandatory applicable law and only if those actions are taken in accordance with such applicable law. Any failure to comply with the above or any other terms and conditions contained herein will result in the automatic termination of this license and the reversion of the rights granted hereunder to Toshiba.
- 4. DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTY. The Software is provided "AS IS" without warranty of any kind. TOSHIBA, TOSHIBA'S AFFILIATES, AND THEIR SUPPLIERS DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES, CONDITIONS OR OTHER TERMS (WHETHER

- EXPRESS OR IMPLIED), INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO WARRANTIES, CONDITIONS AND TERMS OF SATISFACTORY QUALITY, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD-PARTY RIGHTS; AND THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO THE QUALITY AND PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE IS WITH YOU. YOU ACCEPT THAT SOFTWARE MAY NOT MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS AND NO WARRANTY CAN BE GIVEN THAT OPERATION OF THE SOFTWARE WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR-FREE.
- 5. LIMITATION OF LIABILITY. TO THE FULLEST EXTENT LEGALLY PERMITTED, IN NO EVENT SHALL TOSHIBA, TOSHIBA'S AFFILIATES OR THEIR SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR ANY DAMAGES FOR (A) LOST BUSINESS OR REVENUE, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION, LOSS OF BUSINESS DATA; OR (B) CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL OR INDIRECT DAMAGES OF ANY KIND (WHETHER UNDER CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE) ARISING OUT OF: (I) THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE SOFTWARE, EVEN IF TOSHIBA, TOSHIBA'S AFFILIATES OR THEIR SUPPLIER HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES; OR (II) ANY CLAIM BY A THIRD PARTY. SAVE AS SET OUT IN THIS SECTION, TOSHIBA'S ENTIRE LIABILITY UNDER THIS EULA SHALL NOT EXCEED THE PRICE PAID FOR THE SOFTWARE, IF ANY.

PLEASE MAKE AND RETAIN A COPY OF ALL DATA YOU HAVE INSERTED INTO YOUR PRODUCT, FOR EXAMPLE NAMES, ADDRESSES, PHONE NUMBERS, PICTURES, RINGTONES ETC, BEFORE SUBMITTING YOUR PRODUCT FOR A WARRANTY SERVICE, AS SUCH DATA MAY BE DELETED OR ERASED AS PART OF THE REPAIR OR SERVICE PROCESS.

- Laws. This EULA will be governed by the laws of Japan.
 All disputes arising out of this EULA shall be subject to the exclusive jurisdiction of the Tokyo District Court.
- 7. Export Laws. Any use, duplication or disposal of the Software involves products and/or technical data that may be controlled under the export laws of applicable countries or region and may be subject to the approval of the applicable governmental authorities prior to export. Any export, directly or indirectly, in contravention of the export laws of applicable countries or region is prohibited.
- Third Party Beneficiary. You agree that certain suppliers
 of the Software to Toshiba have a right as a third party
 beneficiary to enforce the terms of this EULA against you as
 a user.

Trademarks and Patents

Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations:

inted states raterits and or their counterparts in other nations .				
4,901,307	5,504,773	5,109,390		
5,535,239	5,267,262	5,600,754		
5,416,797	5,778,338	5,490,165		
5,101,501	5,511,073	5,267,261		
5,568,483	5,414,796	5,659,569		
5,056,109	5,506,865	5,228,054		
5,544,196	5,337,338	5,657,420		
5,710,784				



Java and all Java-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.



microSD Logo is a trademark.

Powered by Mascot Capsule $^{\circ}$ /Micro3D Edition $^{\text{TM}}$ Mascot Capsule $^{\circ}$ is a registered trademark of HI Corporation $^{\circ}$ 2002-2003 HI Corporation. All Rights Reserved.

THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE MPEG-4 VISUAL PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER FOR (i) ENCODING VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE MPEG-4 VISUAL STANDARD ("MPEG-4 VIDEO") AND/OR (ii) DECODING MPEG-4 VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED BY MPEG-LA TO PROVIDE MPEG-4 VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION INCLUDING THAT RELATING TO PROMOTIONAL, INTERNAL AND COMMERCIAL USES AND LICENSING MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, LLC. SEE HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM.



T9 Text Input is covered by Japan Pat.No. 特許 3532780,3492981 and other patents pending.

Trademarks and Patents

Chaku-Uta®, Chaku-Uta Full® is a registered trademark of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.

Copyright © 1998-2003 The OpenSSL Project. All rights reserved. Copyright © 1995-1998 Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com) All rights reserved.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE OPENSSL PROJECT AND/OR BY ERIC YOUNG "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE OPENSSL PROJECT, ERIC YOUNG OR ITS CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

QR Code is a registered trademark of Denso wave Incorporated.

Sky Mail, S! Mail, S! Appli, S! Information Channel, S! Addressbook Back-up, S! Friend's Status, S! Circle Talk, PC Site Browser, Sha-mail, Movie Sha-mail, S! Quick News, S! Town, S! Loop, Arrange Mail, Feeling Mail and Secure Remote Lock are registered trademarks or trademarks of SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.

Copyright © 1995-2006 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved. Macromedia, Flash, Macromedia Flash, and Macromedia Flash Lite are trademarks or registered trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and other countries.

BookSurfing $^{\otimes}$ is a registered trademark of CELSYS, Inc., Voyager Japan, Inc. and INFOCITY, Inc.

"SOFTBANK" SOFTBANK's equivalent in Japanese, and the SOFTBANK logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK CORP. in Japan and in other countries.

This product contains NetFront Mobile Client Suite of ACCESS CO.,LTD.

ACCESS and NetFront are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and other countries.

© 2008 ACCESS CO., LTD. All rights reserved.

This software is based in part on the work of the Independent JPEG Group.





This product uses OKAO $^{\mathsf{TM}}$ Vision of OMRON Corporation.

"OKAO" and "OKAO Vision" are registered trademarks of OMRON Corporation in Japan.

Yahoo! and the Yahoo!/Y! logos are trademarks and/or registered trademarks of Yahoo! Inc.

All other company names and trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

SAR

This 822T mobile phone complies with the technical standards for the absorption of radio frequency (RF) energy as set by the Japanese government. These technical standards, based upon scientific evidence, were established to ensure that RF energy from wireless mobile devices used next to the head do not have a serious effect on human health. The maximum Specific Absorption Rate (SAR), which measures the average radio wave energy absorbed by the human head, set by the Japanese government is 2 W/kg*. This allowed value includes a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and stature. The value corresponds with the international guidelines prescribed by the International Commission on Nonlonizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP) in cooperation with the World Health Organization (WHO).

All models of mobile phones are required to comply with the technical standards of Japan set forth in the Radio Law before being released for sale. The 822T has received construction design certification under the Radio Law with a SAR value of 0.984 W/kg. This maximum SAR value was determined by TÜV Rheinland Japan, Ltd. (registered certification agency) and the Telecom Engineering Center (measurement agency) at the maximum transmission power of this handset with measurement carried out conforming to the guidelines set by the Japanese government. Depending on the product, there may be minute differences in the SAR. However, they are within the allowed limits. During calling, the actual SAR is lower as the handset is designed to use the minimum transmission power necessary to communicate with the mobile network.

Additional information about SAR can be found at the website listed below.

Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications website:

http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/j/ele/index.htm

Association of Radio Industries and Businesses (ARIB) website:

http://www.arib-emf.org/initiation/sar.html

SoftBank website:

http://www.softbankmobile.co.jp/corporate/legal/emf/emf03.html Toshiba Mobile Phone website:

http://www.toshiba.co.jp/product/etsg/cmt/

* The technical guidelines are stipulated in the Ministerial Ordinance Related to the Radio Law (Wireless Equipment Regulations, Article 14-2).

About SoftBank's Body SAR Policy

- Body SAR: Refers to the SAR of the maximum transmission power when continuously calling with the handset attached to the body and using an earphone.
- ** Specific Absorption Rate (SAR): Measured value of continuous calling at 6 minute intervals.
 - Our technical standards for body SAR include the U.S. Federal Communications Commission (FCC) standards and information from Europe. For more information see the sections on "FCC RF Exposure Information" and "European RF Exposure Information."
- *** Placement on the body: Measurements were taken with the rear of the phone facing the body at a distance of 1.5 cm as the normal position of the handset. In order to maintain compliance with radio frequency (RF) exposure requirements, use accessories that maintain a 1.5 cm separation distance between the body and the back of the handset. Choose accessories, such as belt clips and holsters, that do not contain metallic components.

FCC RF Exposure Information

The guidelines established by the FCC are based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The standards include a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health.

The exposure standard for wireless handsets employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR). The SAR limit set by the FCC is 1.6 W/kq.

The tests are performed according to FCC standards for each model and the maximum SAR value for this model handset, when tested next to the body as described in this user quide, is 0.871 W/kg.

Placement on the body: Measurements for the 822T were taken with the normal position as the rear of the phone facing the body at a distance of 1.5 cm. In order to maintain compliance with FCC RF exposure requirements, use accessories that maintain a 1.5 cm separation distance between the body and the back of the handset. Choose accessories, such as belt clips and holsters, that do not contain metallic components.

The use of accessories that do not satisfy these requirements may not comply with FCC RF exposure requirements, and should be avoided. Additional information on Specific Absorption Rates (SAR) can be found on the homepage listed below:

Cellular Telecommunications & Internet Association (CTIA) website: http://www.phonefacts.net

European RF Exposure Information

Your mobile device is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed not to exceed limits recommended by international guidelines for exposure to radio waves. These guidelines were developed by the independent scientific organization International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP) and include safety margins designed to assure the protection of all persons, regardless of age and health.

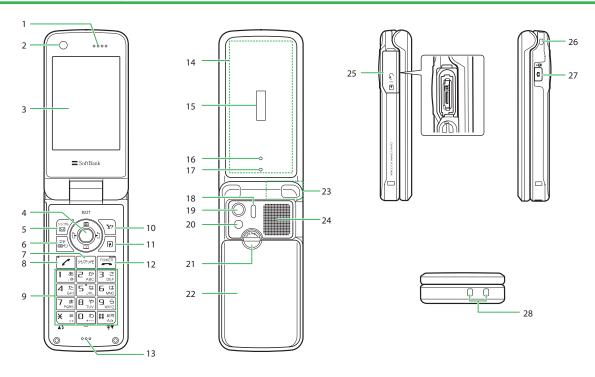
The exposure standard for wireless handsets employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR). The SAR limit for mobile devices is 2 W/kg and the highest SAR value for this device when positioned near the body is $0.488 \, \text{W/kg}^*$.

As SAR is measured utilizing the device's highest transmitting power the actual SAR of this device during operation is typically below that indicated above. This is because the handset was designed to use the minimum level of transmission power necessary to communicate with the mobile network. The World Health Organization (WHO) has stated that present scientific information does not indicate the need for any special precautions for the use of mobile devices. They note that if you want to reduce your exposure then you can do so by limiting the length of calls or using a "hands-free" device to keep the mobile phone away from the head and body. Additional information about SAR can be found at the WHO homepage listed below. http://www.who.int/emf

* These tests for wearing the mobile device on the body are carried out in accordance with FCC standards and the values are based on European requirements.

Handset Parts · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	·· 1-2
Handset Parts/Key Functions · · · · · · · · ·		· · 1-2
Display Indicators & Information Pro	npt · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	·· 1-4
Indicators · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · 1-4
Information Prompt · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· · 1-6
Charging the Battery · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	•••••	·· 1-7
Power On/Off · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	•••••	· 1-10
Date & Time · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	•••••	· 1-11
Setting Date and Time · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· 1-11
Clock Format (12-hour/24-hour) · · · · ·		· 1-11
About Mobile Manners · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· 1-12
Manner Mode and Offline Mode · · · · ·		· 1-12
Codes · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· 1-13
About Codes · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		· 1-13

Handset Parts/Key Functions



- **Earpiece**
- Sub Camera
- Display
- Multi Selector : Move the cursor. Center Key (): Access Main Menu.
- Mail Key (Left Softkey) (27: Access the Messaging Menu. (Press and hold): Switch to/cancel Simple Mode.
- 6 Media Player Key .: Access the Audio Menu or use to make/answer video calls
- Clear/Memo Key [2005]: Delete characters and return to the previous operation.
 - (Press and hold): Set or cancel Answering Machine.
- **Send Key** : Make and answer voice calls.
- **Keypad**: Enter phone numbers, characters, etc.
 - Turn on/off Mobile Light when using the camera.
 - (Press and hold): Display My Status.
 - (Press and hold): Set or cancel Manner Mode.
- 10 Yahoo! Keitai Key (Right Softkey) \(\sigma\): Access Yahoo! Keitai.
- 11 Shortcut Key 🕞: Access the Shortcuts Menu.
- **12 End/Power Key** First End calls/operations.
 - (Press and hold): Power handset on/off.
- 13 Microphone
- 14 Twinkle Light: Illuminates for incoming calls and messages.
- 15 External Display
- **16 Charging Indicator**: Lights during charging and goes out when charging is complete.
- 17 External Light
- 18 Infrared Port
- 19 Main Camera
- 20 Mobile Light
- 21 Battery Cover Lock
- 22 Battery Cover
- 23 Internal Antenna
- 24 Speaker

- 25 Earphone Microphone Jack **External Device Port**
- 26 Handstrap Hole
- **27 Side Key** : Activate the camera viewfinder/shutter.
 - (Press and hold in Standby): Activate the video viewfinder.
 - (Press and hold with the handset closed): Set or cancel Manner Mode, illuminate Twinkle Light or turn the torch (penlight) on (the key function can be changed (page 2-4)).
- 28 Charger Terminal
 - Signal sensitivity may be reduced by touching/covering Internal Antenna area. Do not cover this area by affixing stickers, or any other items.
- AC Charger and Earphone-Microphone cannot be used simultaneously.

Display Indicators & Information Prompt

Indicators

Display



- ① 📆 Signal Strength
 - Strong Moderate Weak Faint Out of Range
 - M Offline Mode On
- ② 🎒 / 🗗 Voice/Video Call
 - Dial-up Connection
- ③ Packet Transmission
 - Displaying Picture File with Location Information
 - Ready Packet Transmission Ready
 - Packet Network Range
 - if 3G Network Unavailable
- 4 Memory Card Inserted

- ⑤

 S! Information Channel Updated
 - Reception of Rights Object
 Indicates the reception of a content key during operation.
 - Message Box Full
 - Message Delivery Failed
 - New Messages
 Delivery Report
 - New S! Mail/SMS and Delivery Report
- ⑥ PC Site Connected
 - 🦠 S! Quick News Updated
- 7 🎥 Web SSL

Indicates a connection to a web page with security protection.

- nfrared Communication
- My Status Online
- ® Software Update
 - External Connection for Data Synchronization
 - Appli Activated/Paused
 - Relaying Music File
 - Music File Playback Paused
 - Rlaying Video File
 - 👼 Streaming
- (Silent)
 - Manner Mode (Alarms)
 - % / % / Manner Mode (Original 1 to 3)
- 10 III Battery Level
- Sufficiently Charged
 - Low
 - Very Low
 - Charge Immediately
 - Charging

- ① Time
- (1) Keypad Lock Active
 Password Lock Active
- 13 T Alarm Set
- (4) Machine On (No Messages)
- / | / | / | / | Answering Machine Off (Message(s) Recorded) (B) | Missed Call(s) (Message(s) Recorded at
 - Voice Mail Center)
 - Scall Forwarding (Ringer Off for Voice Call) Call Forwarding (Ringer Off for Video Call)
 - Call Forwarding (Ringer Off for Voice and Video Calls)
- 16 🗐 Information Prompt Redisplay
- ® Show Secret
- ⑤ S! Friend's Status Notification (Invitation)

External Display

View information with the handset closed on the External Display. Press • to toggle between the Clock display and Icon display.

- When Idle Screen is set to Clock Only, no icon appears on the Clock display.
- While playing music files, close the handset and press a to display Music Player (page 7-5).





Icon Display

- ① iii Signal Strength
 Indicates one of four levels (as on the Display).
 - Out of Range
 - Offline Mode On
- @ Battery Level Indicates one of four levels (as on the Display).
- Charging
- $\ensuremath{\mathfrak{G}}$ Time

- ④

 Message Box Full

 Mess
 - Message Delivery Failed
 - New Messages
 - Delivery Report
 - New S! Mail/SMS and Delivery Report
 - Password Lock Active
 - Keypad Lock Active
 - Cannot Start Music Player

 Messaging icons take priority over the

 Password Lock Active, Keypad Lock Active
 and Cannot Start Music Player icons.
- ⑤ In Missed Call(s)
 - Manner Mode (Silent)
 - Manner Mode (Alarms)
 - Missed Call(s) icon takes priority over Manner Mode icons.
- ⑥ 图 Missed Call(s) (Message(s) Recorded at Voice Mail Center)
 - 필/액/뗔/뗔/细/细Answering Machine On (Message(s) Recorded)
 - (Message(s) Recorded)

Information Prompt

Information Prompt appears to inform you of missed calls, new messages and other information.

Information Prompt appears



2 Select an item→•

The following items are available.

Information Prompt Items

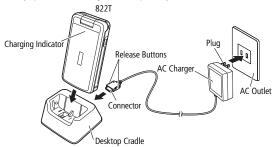
- Missed Calls: Missed call(s)
- Missed Calls: New Voice Mail message(s) at Voice Mail Center
- Answer Phone: New message(s) recorded
- New Messages: Unread S! Mail/SMS
- **Unsent Messages**: Unsent S! Mail/SMS
- Partly Sent: Unsent S! Mail for some recipients
- Delivered: Unread delivery report(s)
- Missed CT: Missed S! Circle Talk call(s)
- Notification: New S! Friend's Status notification(s)
- **Info Channel**: Content update(s) available
- Info Channel: S! Information Channel update failed
- Weather Updated: Weather report update available
- 篇 Update Failed: S! Quick News update failed
- Stop Snooze: Cancel snooze
- Resume S! Appli: S! Appli paused
- Software Update: Software updated
 - Content Key Memory Full (Keys Full): Content key cannot be saved any more

Charging the Battery

- \bullet Charging at low temperatures may be ineffective. Charge battery between 5°C 35°C.
- Battery must be installed in handset before charging. Use only specified AC Charger (sold separately), Desktop Cradle and In-Car Charger (sold separately).
- Regularly clean the charger terminals, battery terminal and External Device Port with a dry cotton swab to avoid contact failure.
- If Please check connection with your charger appears on Display, clean charger terminals, battery terminal and External Device Port with a dry cotton swab and try again.
 - When the message still does not disappear, stop charging immediately, and take the battery to your nearest SoftBank Shop or contact SoftBank General Information (page 13-45).
- Do not charge the battery in humid places.
- Charging is possible while your handset is turned on, but takes longer than while your handset is turned off.
- The handset and AC Charger may warm during charging. However, if it overheats, stop using immediately. There may be some defect.
- If a call arrives during charging, ringtone sounds/handset vibrates and External Light and Twinkle Light flash.

Using Desktop Cradle

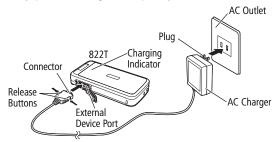
Use only specified AC Charger (sold separately).



- 1 Attach AC Charger connector to Desktop Cradle
 - Inscription on connector should face down.
- Insert the plug into an AC outlet
- 3 Slide handset into Desktop Cradle until it clicks Charging Indicator illuminates red while charging; may take up to approximately 130 minutes.
- 4 Remove handset from Desktop Cradle, then unplug the AC Charger

Using AC Charger

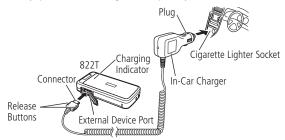
Use only specified AC Charger (sold separately).



- Connect the AC Charger connector to handset
 - Inscription on connector should face down.
- Insert the plug into an AC outlet Charging Indicator illuminates red while charging; may take up to approximately 130 minutes.
- 3 Unplug the AC Charger, then disconnect handset
 - Press and hold Release Buttons to remove the AC Charger connector from handset.
- AC Charger and Desktop Cradle support a power supply of 100 to 240 V AC.
- AC Charger is exclusively for use in Japan.
- Because AC Charger and Earphone-Microphone use the same External Device Port, they cannot be used simultaneously.

Using In-Car Charger

Use only specified In-Car Charger (sold separately).



- Connect the In-Car Charger connector to handset
 - Inscription on connector should face down.
- 2 Insert the plug into the cigarette lighter socket in a car Charging Indicator illuminates red while charging; may take up to approximately 130 minutes.
- 3 Unplug the In-Car Charger, then disconnect handset
 - Press and hold Release Buttons to remove the In-Car Charger connector from handset.

- Do not use the In-Car Charger when the car engine is not running. Doing so may drain the car battery.
- Unplug In-Car Charger when leaving your car. If Charging Indicator remains on after removing car key, In-Car Charger may drain car battery.
- Use of the handset while driving is prohibited by law. Before using the handset, stop the vehicle in a safe area where parking is permitted.
- Because In-Car Charger and Earphone-Microphone use the same External Device Port, they cannot be used simultaneously.

Turning Handset Power On

👖 Press and hold 🚎



Standby

When Handset Powers On for the First Time

Following appears the first time handset is powered on or after performing *Reset All* or *Reset Setting*.



• Set Date & Time (page 1-11).

Retrieving Network Information

Before using network-related services (Yahoo! Keitai, Messaging or S! Appli), retrieve network connection information.

The first time you press (a), (a) or (b), a prompt appears.

📘 Press 💿 / 🗑 / 室



2 Select YES⇒ ●

Handset connects to the network and Network Information is retrieved.

- If Network Information is not acquired, some features will be limited.
- After you replace the USIM Card, make sure you retrieve network information.
- To retrieve network information from Main Menu:



Turning Handset Power Off

Press and hold 🚎

Power-off screen appears and handset powers off.

Date & Time

Setting Date and Time

- The date and time are set for the Main City set in the World Clock settings.
- Press → Settings → → Phone Settings → ● → Clock → ●



CIOCK WIIIGOW

2 Select Date&Time ⇒ ●



- 3 Enter the year, month, day and time →●
 - Enter the year, month, day, hour and minute (two digits each). Enter time in the 24-hour system.
 - Use to move the cursor and to select the numbers.
 - The day of the week is set automatically.

Clock Format (12-hour/24-hour)

From Clock Window, select 12hour/ 24hour ••



2 Select 12 hour or 24 hour ⇒ •

1

Manner Mode and Offline Mode

Be careful about disturbing others in public or quiet areas.

- Turn the handset off in theaters, museums and other places where silence is the norm.
- Observe signs and instructions regarding handset use aboard trains, etc.
- In airplanes, turn off your handset so that it does not disturb flight safety.
- In such places as hospitals and research institutes, where no use of mobile phones is allowed, turn off your handset so that it does not affect precision apparatuses.
- In such quite places as restaurants and hotel lobbies, be careful so that your talking voice does not bother others around you.
- Refrain from use that interrupts the flow of pedestrian or vehicle traffic.

Using Manner Mode

Press and hold



- To cancel Manner Mode, press and hold
 ## END while it is set.
- Shutter click and recording start/end tone sound even in Manner Mode.
- S! Circle Talk connects automatically if My Status is set to Auto Join. Other party's voice will sound from speaker when connected even in Manner Mode.

Using Offline Mode

Use Offline Mode to temporarily suspend all handset transmissions. In Offline Mode, incoming/outgoing calls and network services, such as transmission of S! Mail/SMS are blocked.

- 2 Select Offline Mode $\Rightarrow \bullet$ (twice) \Rightarrow $ON \Rightarrow \bullet$



- To cancel Offline Mode, select OFF.
- The following are unavailable in Offline Mode.
 - · Emergency calls: 110 (police), 119 (fire and ambulance) and 118 (coast guard)
 - · Infrared communication

More Features



Manner Mode

(page 12-9)

- Switch Manner Modes
- Customize Original Mode

About Codes

Your Handset Code, Center Access Code, Call Barring Service Code and Internet Security Code are required for some functions and settings.

- Write down those codes. If they are lost, contact SoftBank General Information (page 13-45).
- Do not reveal your codes. SoftBank is not liable for misuse or damages.

Handset Code

Handset Code is a four-digit number. It is required to use various handset functions. Your Handset Code can be changed (page 10-2).

• The default setting is "9999".

Center Access Code

Center Access Code is a four-digit number assigned at initial subscription. It is required to perform Optional Service operations via landlines or to subscribe to fee-based content on the Internet.

Call Barring Service Code

Call Barring Service Code is a four-digit number assigned at initial subscription. It is required to set Call Barring. The code can be changed (page 3-18).

If the code is incorrectly entered three times, Call Barring settings lock. If this happens, Call Barring Service Code and Center Access Code must be changed. For details, contact SoftBank General Information (page 13-45).

Internet Security Code

Internet Security Code is required to set Internet security. The code can be changed (page 10-7).

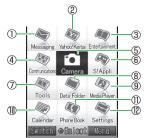
Menu Operations······2-2
Accessing Handset Functions · · · · 2-2
Simple Mode2-6
Using Only Basic Functions · · · · 2-6
Nallpaper/Active Window · · · · · 2-8
Standby · · · · 2-8
Fext Entry · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
About Text Entry
Entering Characters · · · · · 2-11
Editing Text · · · · · 2-14
Nord List · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
Saving Frequently Used Words · · · · · 2-16
Phone Book
Creating Phone Book Entries · · · · 2-18
Using Phone Book · · · · · 2-20
Data Folder····································
Data Folder Structure · · · · · 2-22
Opening Files · · · · · 2-23
Managing Files and Folders

2

Menu Operations

Accessing Handset Functions

Press • in Standby to open Main Menu. Use 🐧 to select a menu icon and press 💿 to access that menu



Main Menu

①Messaging

Create S! Mail/SMS messages, Also check received and sent S! Mail/SMS messages (Chapter 4).

2 Yahoo! Keitai

From Yahoo! Keitai menu, access the Mobile Internet to download pictures, melodies and applications. Use PC Site Browser to access websites for PCs (Chapter 5).

③Entertainment

Access latest news, launch BookSurfing® and visit Ku-man's Room (Chapter 8).

(4) Communications

Access Communication Services provided by SoftBank (S! Town, S! Loop, S! Friend's Status, S! Circle Talk) (Chapter 9).

(5) Camera

Take pictures and record videos (Chapter 6).

6S! Appli

Access applications such as games (Chapter 7).

(7)Tools

Access useful functions such as Alarms and Calculator (Chapter 8).

®Data Folder

Save/access files here (Chapter 2). Media Player

Play music and video files (Chapter 7).

(11)Calendar

View the Calendar and save events (Chapter 8).

Phone Book

Save and access Phone Book information (Chapter 2).

®Settings

Modify and confirm handset settings, and perform data communication and backup (Chapters 11, 12).

Switching Main Menu View

Change Main Menu view from Icon View (default) to Tab View.

In Tab View, sub menu items appear when a tab is selected





Tab View

- Press (Switch) in Tab View to return to Icon View.
- 2 Use () to select an item

Sub menu list appears below the menu title. Press o or and use to select an item.

Customizing Main Menu

Customize Main Menu design (icons, font color, cursor color, etc.).

Press • > Set Images > • >

Options > •



- Original Default theme.
- Phone Memory Select a theme from handset Data Folder.
- Keitaideco Sets the downloaded Keitaideco as Main Menu.

2 Select an item⇒ 🐨



- 3 Select *Icons* → → *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card* → → *Pictures* → → Select an image →

 - To change the font color:
 Press → Font Color → Select a color → ●
 - To change the wallpaper:
 Press → Wallpaper → → Phone
 Memory or Memory Card → → Pictures or Digital Camera → → Select a wallpaper → ●
 - To change the focus frame:
 Press ¬ Highlight → Select a color → ○

Selecting Menu Items Using Keypad

Enter the menu item number on handset keypad (0.5) to 9.5, (0.5), (0.5) for direct access to that menu item.



Numbers correspond to the keypad.

Changing Multi Selector Shortcuts

By default, a shortcut is assigned to each Multi Selector key. Switch the assigned shortcuts.

Press ● ⇒ Settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Phone
Settings ⇒ ●



Phone Settings Window

2 Select Navigation Keys → •



- 3 Press ●⇒Select the function you want to assign to ⑤⇒●⇒Select the function you want to assign to ⓒ⇒
 ●⇒Select the function you want to assign to ⓒ⇒●
 - The remaining function is assigned automatically to •.

Setting Side Key Function

Set a function to Side Key. Choose from Manner Mode, Torch or Twinkle Light. Press and hold Side Key in Standby with the handset closed to access the set function.

From Phone Settings Window, select

Side Key→ → Select the function to

set→ •

Sub Menu View

Sub Menu View appears at top of sub menus (press) (Menu) for sub menu access). When multiple sub menu items are available, the two most recently selected items appear in Sub Menu View.

- From Phone Settings Window, select

 Sub Menu View

 ●
- 2 Select Show or Hide⇒●
- This setting is disabled for S! Circle Talk, S! Circle Talk Call Log and S! Friend's Status.

Adding Functions to Shortcuts Menu

Add frequently used functions to Shortcuts Menu for quick and easy access.

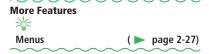
1 Open a function → 🗇



Press (Assign)

Using Shortcuts Menu

- **1** Press ∕¬⇒Select a function⇒ ●
- Up to two functions can be called up from Shortcuts Menu.



Using Only Basic Functions

Use Simple Mode to limit menu items. Select from following menu types.

View Menu	List View	Icon View		
Menu 1	Phone Book Search Message Box Create Message Manner Mode My Number Add to Phone Book Tools	Message Box Add to Phone Book		Manner Mode Tools
	Settings Full Menu	Settings	My Number	Full Menu
Menu 2	Phone Book Messaging Camera	Alarms	Camera	Data Folder
	Data Folder My Number Alarms	Messaging	Phone Book	Tools
	Tools Settings Full Menu	Settings	My Number	Full Menu
Menu 3	Phone Book Messaging Yahoo! Keitai	Yahoo! Keitai	Camera	Data Folder
	Camera My Number Data Folder	Messaging	Phone Book	Tools
	Tools Settings Full Menu	Settings	My Number	Full Menu

 In Simple Mode, Sub Menu View switches to *Hide* (off). If Standby clock (page 2-9) is set to *Mini Clock*, the setting changes to *1-Line Digit* in Simple Mode. These settings remain after canceling Simple Mode.

Switching to Simple Mode

Press and hold



- 2 Select YES → Select a font size →

 Select a menu pattern → ●
- From Main Menu:
 Press → Settings → SimpleMode
 ON → ●

Accessing Main Menu

🚺 In Simple Mode, press 💿



Main Menu

• Press (Switch) to toggle between List View and Icon View.

Canceling Simple Mode

- In Simple Mode, press and hold \nearrow $YES \Rightarrow \bullet$
- Font size settings remain even after Simple Mode is canceled.

More Features



Simple Mode Functions (▶ page 2-27)



Standby

2

Setting Wallpaper

Press $\bigcirc \Rightarrow Settings \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow Display$ $\Rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$



Display Setting Window

2 Select Idle Screen → ● → Main Display
 → ● → Wallpaper → ● → Picture → ●



- 3 Select Phone Memory or Memory Card

 → → Select a folder → → Select an image →
 - Default image:
 Select *Preset* ⇒ (twice)
 - Keitaideco: Select *Keitaideco* → ● (twice)
- 4 Use ❖ to compose the image⇒

 √ (Cut) ⇒ ●

Setting an Animation as Wallpaper

Set a series of images (pictures or photos you took) in Data Folder as Standby animation. The display order and pattern can be specified.

From Display Setting Window, select

Idle Screen→ → Main Display→ →

Wallpaper → → Animation → ●



- **2** Select *Image* →
 - To specify the display method:
 Select Design → Select a pattern →
 (twice) → (Set)
 - To specify the display sequence:
 Select Order → Select the display sequence → G (Set)
- 3 Select *Images List* → Select an image list →
 - To set images in Data Folder to an image list in advance:

 Press (€) (Edit) Select an image list item

 • Phone Memory or Memory

 Card • Select an image (twice)

 (Set)
 - To display the images in the selected folder as an animation:
 - Select **Select Folder** → Select a folder → (Set)
 - To set the image preinstalled in the handset:
 Select *Preset* → (Set)
- 4 Press 🗑 (Set)

Clock

From Display Setting Window, select

Idle Screen → ● → Main Display → ●

→ Others → ● → Select a clock type

→ ●

Active Window

Save contact information to Members List and make calls, send messages and initiate S! Circle Talk from Active Window. In addition, check the latest information from S! Quick News and Weather Indicator.

Enabling Active Window Operations

Press 🝮

You can perform Active Window operations when the cursor is displayed.



Shortcut Mode



Communication Mode

 Press (Switch) to toggle between Shortcut and Communication Modes. ①S! Quick News

Displays newly received information and images.

- ②Weather Indicator
- **3Members List**

Your current status (My Status) is displayed on the top. Set an icon or a photo for each member

Save members from S! Friend's Status Members List to view their status. Make calls, send messages or initiate S! Circle Talk in Communication Mode

Saving People to Members List

Add members to Members List from S! Friend's Status Members List or Phone Book. View member's status from Active Window.

- From Active Window (Communication Mode), select an empty item→ (Save)
 - To change members:
 Select an entry → Change Member
 → YES → ●
- 2 Select *Friend Status* or *Phone Book* ⇒ Select an entry → ●

Contacting Members

- From Active Window (Communication Mode), use (to select a member
- 2 Use 📀 to select a contact method $\Rightarrow (\bullet)$
 - To make a call
 - : To create and send a message
 - i: To make an S! Circle Talk call

Checking S! Quick News Updates

- You must register contents of S! Ouick News in advance (page 8-15).
- From Active Window (Shortcut Mode), use (♣) to select S! Quick News → (●)
 - Press (Update) to update information. Press \(\sigma\) (Access) to access selected site.
- If update fails, Information Prompt appears. In List Window, press Then select Update to initiate update.

Checking Weather Forecast

- For details on using the Weather Indicator, see page 8-16.
- From Active Window (Shortcut Mode), use (*) to select Weather Indicator icons⇒●

External Display

Set Indicators off or on for External Display.

From Display Setting Window, select Idle Screen \Rightarrow (•) \Rightarrow Ext. Display \Rightarrow (•) \Rightarrow Icon+Clock or Clock Only

More Features



Active Window



page 2-28)



Active Window Settings (▶ page 12-6)

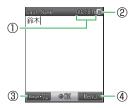
- Select S! Quick News Information to Display
- Set Ticker Speed
- Set Updated Information Display
- Set Image Display for New Information
- Delete All Registered Contents from S! Ouick News and S! Loop Lists

Text Entry

About Text Entry

There are four kinds of input methods: Standard mode, Beeper mode, T9 mode and Multi-tap mode. Unless otherwise noted, text entry operations are described using Standard mode. For details on entering text in Beeper mode, see page 13-10.

About Text Entry Window



- ①Number of characters entered/Maximum number of characters allowed is displayed. The maximum number of characters allowed varies depending on the function.
- ②Indicates the current input mode.
- ③Selects the range of text. By pressing • when a text range is selected, you can perform operations such as copying or saving the selected text to the Word List.
- ④By pressing ∑, you can perform operations such as editing text and arranging message text.

Switching Text Input Modes

- 📘 In a text entry window, press 🗷
 - Unavailable text input modes are not displayed.



2 Select a text input mode •• • The text input mode is switched.

Text Input Mode Icons

- **3**: Kanji (hiragana)
- : Single-bye katakana
- Double-byte alphanumerics (upper case)
- a: Double-byte alphanumerics (lower case)
- Single-byte alphanumerics (upper case)
- a: Single-byte alphanumerics (lower case)
- Double-byte numbers
- 1 : Single-byte numbers
- URL: Enter e-mail address and URL extensions from the address library.

Pict: Enter pictographs.

 $(^-$): Enter emoticons.

My Pict: Enter pictographs in My Pictograms folder.

Entering Characters

- For text entry key assignments, see page 13-9. Example: Entering 獨々木
- In a text entry window, enter 🗺



2 Press 💿



- To exit the suggestion list and enter characters after \$\(\psi \), press \(\frac{\pi_{\mathref{T}}}{\pi_{\mathref{T}}} \).
- 3 Use ❖ to select 源々木 → ●

 源々木 is determined.
 - To finish text entry, press after determining entered text.

Lower Case (a, つ, etc.)

In all the input modes except Numeric, you can change the case of a character selected by the cursor (unconverted character) (compatible characters only).

Example: Changing 5 to lower case

- In a text entry window, press 🝱
- Press #™ → •

Adding " or "

In Kanji (hiragana) input mode and Single-byte katakana input mode, you can add " " " (dakuten) and " " " (handakuten) to a character selected by the cursor (unconverted character) (compatible characters only).

Example: Entering bi

- 🚺 In a text entry window, press 🝱
- 2 Press ★ ... → •

i is determined.

Hiragana to Alphanumerics/Katakana Conversion

Enter alphanumerics and katakana in Kanji (hiragana) input mode.

Example: Entering TOM (single-byte) in Kanji (hiragana) input mode

- In a text entry window, press the key to which the character is assigned
 - Press ☐ (once) → ☐ (three times) → ☐ (once) → ☐ (
- Press 🗊 (Kana)

A suggestion list of roman characters and katakana appears.

- Press (Kana) (Num.) to switch between roman character/katakana conversion and number conversion.
- 3 Press ♀→◆ to select TOM (single-byte)→•

TOM (single-byte) is determined.

Displaying Characters in Reverse Order

In all the input modes except Numeric, you can display unconverted characters on the cursor in the reverse order from the one on the Key assignments chart by pressing ...

Example: Entering the characters assigned to 2 n

Symbols

In a text entry window, press High The double-byte symbol list window appears.



2 Select a symbol⇒⊙

The selected symbol is entered and the symbol list window disappears.

 To enter symbols continuously from the symbol list window, press after selecting each symbol.

Alphanumerics

- In a text entry window, press [#] (twice)
 The double-byte alphanumeric list window appears.
 - The number of times # 200 is pressed differs depending on the function.



- 2 Select a number or letter→•
 - Repeat this step to enter another number or letter.

Pictographs

 You may be unable to enter pictographs depending on the function.



2 Select a pictograph⇒●

The selected pictograph is entered and the pictograph list window disappears.

 To enter pictographs continuously from the pictograph list window, press after selecting each pictograph.

Emoticons

- In a text entry window, press (twice)
 The emoticon list window appears.
 - The number of times 🔀 is pressed differs depending on the function.



2 Select an emoticon → •

The selected emoticon is entered and the emoticon list window disappears.

 To enter emoticons continuously from the emoticon list window, press after selecting each emoticon. 2

E-mail Address and URL Extensions

Example: Entering .co.jp (part of an e-mail address)

The address library is displayed.



2 Select $.co.jp \Rightarrow \bullet$

Editing Text

Correcting Entered Text

In a text entry window, move the cursor to the left of the character you want to delete→ □□□□

The character to the right of the cursor is deleted.

- To delete all the characters to the right of the cursor, press and hold
- To delete all the characters, move the cursor at the end of the text and then press and hold
- 2 Enter correct characters

Deleting Multiple Characters

In a text entry window, move the cursor to the first character of the text range you want to delete→ (Range · paste)



- 2 Select Start → → Move the cursor to the last character of the text range → •
- 3 Select Delete ⇒ ●

Copy/Cut/Paste

- In a text entry window, move the cursor to the first character of the text range you want to copy/cut→

 (Range•paste)
- Select Start → → Move the cursor to the last character of the text range → ●
- 3 Select Cut or Copy → ●

 The selected range of text is stored on the clipboard.
- 4 Position the cursor



5 Press (Range · paste) → Paste → •



6 Select the text to paste → •



Undoing Last Operation

In a text entry window, press
→ Undo ⇒ (•)



• Once text is reconverted or replaced, undo is unavailable.

More Features



Text Entry Functions During Text Entry

page 2-28)





Text Entry Settings

(page 12-28)

- Change the Input Method
- Do Not Predict Words from Previously Entered Text Strings
- Do Not Predict Next Phrase from Previously Entered Phrases
- Set the Custom Window
- Reset the Prediction Dictionary/Conversion Dictionary

Saving Frequently Used Words

In a text entry window, press Customize → • → Word List → •



Select To Word List ⇒ ● → Word ⇒ ●

⇒Enter a word ⇒ ●



3 Select *Reading* → ● ⇒Enter a reading → ●



4 Press 室 (OK)

Saving to Word List During Text Entry

- In a text entry window, move the cursor to the first character of the word you want to save⇒ (Rangepaste)
- 2 Select Start → → Move the cursor to the last character of the word → ●
- 3 Select *To Word List* ⇒ ●

 A window appears where you can save the word to the Word List.
- 4 Select *Reading* → ⇒Enter the reading → ●
- 5 Press 室 (OK)

Editing Saved Words

In a text entry window, press ¬→

Customize → • → Word List → • →

Edit Word → •



- 2 Select a word→((Edit)→Select the word/reading→()→Edit the word/reading→()
- 3 Press 🔀 (OK)

More Features



Word List Functions



Phone Book

Save phone numbers, e-mail address and other contact information to Phone Book.

Phone Book Entry Items-

Basic Information

Name and Reading Entry Number Phone Number Options

Picture Group

Personal Information

Note

Options

E-mail Address

External Light
Ringtone Volume
Ringtone
Vibration
Ring Time
Message Folder
Secret
External Display

Personal Information

Address
Job Title
Company
Birthday
URL
Location Information

Access Phone Book information while making calls, writing messages, creating S! Circle Talk groups.

Some Features

Speed Dial

Make calls to people in Phone Book quickly.

S! Addressbook Back-up

Back up Phone Book to server. Sync updates to back up new information.

Messaging

Specify addresses from Phone Book quickly when writing messages.

Reject Calls

Reject calls from numbers not saved in Phone Book.

• Back Up Important Information

When the battery is exhausted or removed for long periods, Phone Book entries may be lost. Handset damage may also affect handset information recovery. SoftBank is not liable for damages from lost or altered data.

Creating Phone Book Entries

Example: Saving a name, phone number and e-mail address, and specifying a group.

Press $\bullet \Rightarrow Phone \ Book \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow Add$ $New \Rightarrow \bullet$



Phone Book Entry Window

- 2 Select Name → → Last Name or First

 Name → → Enter a last name/first

 name → → ☞ (OK)
 - Characters entered for name (reading for kanji) appear.
 - To correct the reading, select a reading field (last name or first name) and edit the information

 When you save to USIM Phone Book, enter both the first name and last name in the *Name* field.



- 3 Select *Phone Number* → → Enter a phone number → → Select a category →
 - To enter a hyphen "-" to delimit area code, local number and number or a pause "P" (page 3-15), press ∑ while entering a phone number and then select *Manual Hyphen* or *Pause* (*P*).



4 Select *Email* → ● ⇒Enter an e-mail address → ● ⇒Select a category ⇒ ●



5 Select *No Group* ⇒ • Select a group ⇒ •



6 Press (OK)

Setting a Picture

- From Phone Book Entry Window, select

 Picture

 •
- **2** Select *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card* **→**
 - To capture an image: Select *Take Picture* → ● → Take a picture → ●
 For details on taking pictures, see page 6-3.
- 3 Select *Pictures* or *Digital Camera* → ●

 ⇒Select a picture → (twice)
 - If the selected picture does not fit in the prescribed frame, adjust the picture size (page 6-9).



• If Details of a picture file (page 2-32) indicate that the file is *Unavailable* for forwarding, the picture file cannot be set as Picture.

Setting Personal Ringtones

- From Phone Book Entry Window, select

 Options

 ●
- 2 Select a type of incoming event → → Ringtone → •



- 3 Select *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card*→
 - To set a ringtone preinstalled in the handset:
 Select *Patterns* or *Melodies* → →
 Select a ringtone pattern → ○
 - If you select Same as Phone, the ringtone will be the same as the corresponding setting of Sounds.
- 4 Select a folder → → Select a ringtone pattern → (twice)

Secret Entries

Set specific Phone Book entries as Secret so other people cannot see them.

- From Phone Book Entry Window, select

 Options → ●
- 2 Select Secret $\Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow oN \Rightarrow \bullet$



- indicates a Secret entry.
- To view Secret entries, switch Secret Mode (page 10-4) to Show.

Saving Numbers from Call Log

Press **⊙**/⊙



- To switch between Dialed and Received, press ♠ / ♠.
- 2 Select a phone number→¬¬¬

To Phone Book → • Add New → •

• To add the phone number to an existing

 To add the phone number to an existing Phone Book entry, select Add and select the entry.

Using Phone Book

Calling from Phone Book

1 Press 📀



- Press or or to access the previous or next index tab.
- 2 Select an entry⇒•



- Press or or to scroll entries within the same index tab.
- 3 Select a phone number⇒∠
- In Standby, press and hold a number key (1 to 9 to access the corresponding index tab.

Changing Search Mode

Press ♀⇒ ¬Search Mode→●



- 2 Select a search mode⇒●
 - Select from the following search modes.
 List View:

Select tab then scroll through entries.

- By Reading:

 Enter reading (or partial reading) to search entries
- By Memory No.: Search by entry number (Memory
- Number). Enter target entry number. **By Phone No.**:
- Search by entering a phone number. *Group Filter*:

Search entries by Group.

* 29ッチ練(By 2-Touch), if 語網(Language) is set to 日籍(Japanese). In By 2-Touch search, select the first character of a reading (Press any of ① 即 to 图 即 , 图 和 即 中 Press any of 图 即 to 图 即 , 图 和 和 即 中 Press any of 图 即 to 图 如 ,

More Features



Phone Book Entry Functions

(page 2-30)

Managing Phone Book (▶ page 2-31)



Phone Book Settings (▶ page 12-29) • Change the Default Storage Location

- Prohibit Use of Phone Book

Settings for Phone Book Groups

(page 12-29)

• Edit a Group Name/Group Icon

Data Folder Structure

Use Data Folder to save and manage files on handset. Files are saved to folders by file format.

Folders Digital Camera*1 **Pictures** Ring Song · Tone S! Appli Music Picture files including those Pictures taken in Digital Sound files such as Downloaded S! Appli Downloaded music files. melodies, sounds recorded taken with the camera/My mode Chaku-Uta Full® with Voice Recorder Pictograms folder **Videos Books Templates** Main Menu*2 Flash(R) Mail templates Video files including Electronic comic books. Flash® image files/ Image files for Main those recorded with the photo albums, etc. Flash(R) Tones folder Menu camera Gamendeco Keitaideco Other Documents Icon/image files for Keitaideco files Other files such as screen decoration vObjects, etc.

- *1 Shown only in the memory card Data Folder.
- *2 Shown only in the handset Data Folder.
- Files saved to the handset may be altered or lost by improper use, accidents, or mechanical failure. We recommend that you make backups of your important files.
- 🖺 indicates files requiring content usage rights. Press 🔀 and select **Buy Key** to obtain a content key.

Opening Files





Data Folder Window

2 Select a folder⇒●



3 Select a file⇒●

Using Download Links

Some folders contain a link to Yahoo! Keitai. Use links to access Yahoo! Keitai and download content.

Slide Show

- **1** Open Data Folder*⇒Pictures* →
- 2 Select a file→ \(\sigma\) → Change View → •



- 3 Select Slideshow →
 - To end slide show, press

Managing Files and Folders

Creating a Folder

Folders can be created in the *Pictures, Ring*Song•Tone, Music, Videos, Books, Flash(R),
Main Menu, Gamendeco and Other
Documents folders.

- Open Data Folder⇒Select a folder

 → •
- 2 Press ¬→Create Folder → •



3 Enter a folder name⇒●

Moving Files

- Open Data Folder⇒Select a folder **→**(•)
- 2 Select a file → \(\nabla_v\) → Move → (•)
- 3 Select *One* → •

⇒(•)

- To move multiple files: Select **Select Multi** ⇒ (•) ⇒ Select files ⇒
- To move all files: Select *All* → (•) → Enter your Handset Code



- 4 Select Phone Memory or Memory Card **⇒**(•)
- 5 Select the destination folder → • To move files to a new folder: Press (Create) → Enter a folder name

- If Details of a file indicate that the file is Unavailable for forwarding or memory card transfer, the file cannot be moved to other folders
- When you move a still picture file taken in Digital mode to the memory card, or a music file in MPEG-4 format (.3GP, .MP4 and .M4A) to another folder, select the fixed folder first and then select the destination folder

Setting Folder Security

Set Security Lock ON to require Handset Code entry when accessing files in the folder.

- Open Data Folder⇒Select a folder \Rightarrow (\bullet)
- 2 Select a folder you created ⇒ ¬¬→ Security Lock → (•)
- Enter your Handset Code $\Rightarrow ON \Rightarrow \bullet$

More Features



Functions for Checking Files

page 2-32)

Functions for Using Files (page 2-33) Managing Files/Folders (► page 2-34)

Memory Card

Save files to a memory card.

- This manual refers to a microSD memory card as "memory card".
- Handset may not read/write files when battery level is low.
- Never remove memory card or battery while accessing/formatting files. Doing so may damage memory card resulting in lost files.

 Tiles remove card resulting in lost files.

 Tiles remove card resulting in lost files.

 Tiles remove card resulting in lost files.

 Tiles remove card resulting in lost files.

 Tiles remove card resulting in lost files.

 Tiles remove card resulting in lost files.

 Tiles remove card resulting in lost files.

 Tiles remove card resulting in lost files.

 Tiles remove card resulting in lost files.

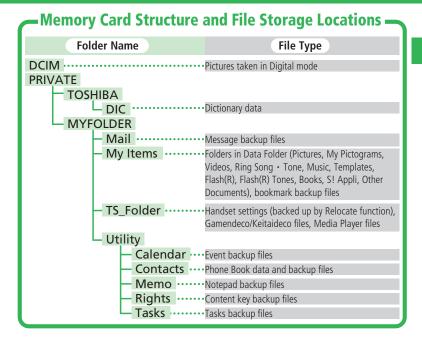
 Tiles remove card resulting in lost files.

 Tiles remove card resulting in lost files.

 Tiles remove card resulting in lost files.

 Tiles remove card resulting in lost files.

 Tiles remove card resulting in lost files.
- Files on memory cards may be altered or lost from improper use, accidents or mechanical failure. Back up important files.
- Do not put labels or stickers on memory cards.
- For details on saving files to a memory card, see the corresponding explanation for each function
- Your handset supports memory cards with a storage capacity of up to 2 GB (as of January 2008). There is no guarantee that all memory cards will work with your handset.



Inserting Memory Card

Before inserting a memory card, turn handset off and remove battery.



Insert memory card until it locks into position (gold terminal should face down)

Removing Memory Card

Turn handset off and remove battery. Gently push to eject card. Slide card out gently.

 The memory card may pop out abruptly when removing it from your handset. Be cautious when ejecting the memory card.

Formatting a Memory Card

Formatting memory card deletes all data on the card.

- If a memory card is formatted on another device, it may not work properly with your handset.
- Press ⇒ Settings → → Memory → ●



2 Select Format Card → ● ⇒Enter your Handset Code ⇒ YES → ●

Checking Data on the Memory Card

1 Press ● *Data Folder* → ● *O*



2 Select a folder → •



3 Select a file → •

More Features



Functions for Checking Files



Advanced Features

Display

Menus

From Main Menu page 2-2
Phone Settings Window page 2-4

Reset Main Menu (Icons/Wallpaper)

Main Menu \nearrow \rightarrow Reset Options \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow $YES \rightarrow$

Reset Multi Selector Assignment

Rename Shortcut Titles

 You cannot edit the titles of preset Shortcut functions

Customize Shortcuts Menu Icons

Select a function → \(\sum_{\text{\text{P}}}\)

■Setting an Icon Preinstalled in the Handset

Change Icon → ● → Preset Icons → ● → Select an icon → ●

■ Setting an Image Saved in Data Folder/ Memory Card

Change Icon → ● → Phone Memory or Memory Card → ● → Pictures → ● → Select an image → ● → ◆ to compose the image → ●

- You cannot change the icons of preset Shortcut functions.
- ■Moving Icons

Arrange Icons → **O** → Select a destination →

Delete Functions from Shortcuts Menu

Select a function → \(\sup \)

■Deleting One Entry

 $Delete \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow YES \Rightarrow \bullet$

■Deleting All Entries

Delete All → ● Enter your Handset Code → **YES** → ●

• You cannot delete preset Shortcut functions.

Simple Mode Functions

From Main Menu page 2-7

Change Main Menu Pattern

Main Menu ► Menu Patterns → Select a pattern → •

Open Main Menu Guide

Main Menu $\searrow \Rightarrow Guidance \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow ON \Rightarrow \bigcirc$

Display Full Menu in Simple Mode

Main Menu **Full Menu**⇒●

Active Window

From Shortcut Mode page 2-9
Communication Mode page 2-9

View Members in Shortcut Mode

Shortcut Mode Settings Templates

Member/News or Member

Edit Members List

To add a new member, select *Edit List*, then
 Not Registered, and press (●).

Change Members List Icons

Communication Mode Select a member → 💟 →

Change Icon → ● Phone Book or Icon →

● → Select the picture of Phone Book or an icon

→ ●

Toggle My Status Display On/Off

Communication Mode \nearrow \rightarrow $Edit List <math>\rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow My$ Status ON or My Status $OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$

Check Member Status

Communication Mode

♦ to select a member

• View • •

Text Entry

Insert a Line Break

In a text entry window, enter text and convert

→ to insert a line break

- To insert a line break to the left of the text that has been determined, access line break from the symbol list window (page 2-12).
- Line break is unavailable in some text entry windows.

Insert a Space

In a text entry window, 🕞

 To insert a space to the left of the text that has been determined, select a space from the symbol list window (page 2-12).

Use Single Kanji Conversion

Example: Entering (すずき)

In a text entry window, enter ₱₱₱₱ (twice)→
Select # from the suggestion list → •

 When 學業院 (Single Kanji Conversion List) is not displayed in a text entry window, the entered characters cannot be converted with Single Kanji conversion.

Convert a Name One Character at a Time

Example: Entering *垂*梨(あかり)

In a text entry window, enter あかか (**) + (***) to select 名前政策 (Name Conversion) (***) → Select 重 → Select (***) → Select (***) → Select (***) (twice)

Use Conversion Prediction/Phrase Prediction

The handset is equipped with MobileRUPO™, Toshiba's kana-kanji conversion engine.



* MobileRUPO[™] is a trademark of Toshiba Corporation.

■Using Conversion Prediction

Example: Entering お父さん

In a text entry window, [1,8] (five times)→[4,8] (

■Using Phase Prediction

Example: Entering the same phrase *統*でライブ that you have entered before

Create Original Emoticons

In a text entry window, \implies $(^-^) \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow$ $User\ Created \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow$ Select an empty item \Rightarrow \implies Create an emoticon $\Rightarrow \bigcirc$ (twice)

Functions During Text Entry

Change Font Size

In a text entry window, ¬¬ Customize →

• Font Size → • Select a font size → •

Insert Phone Book Information

In a text entry window, ¬¬Insert→•

■Inserting Phone Book Information

Phone Book → Select a Phone Book entry → Select an item → •

■Inserting Other Information

My Details, Phrases, Emoticon, Signature, Notepad, Message Box of URL History ⇒ ●

Save Text to Notepad

• If you save to a notepad with contents stored, it will be overwritten.

Save Numbers/E-mail Addresses to Phone Book

In a text entry window, move the cursor to the first character of the text range \longrightarrow $Start \implies$ \bigcirc \longrightarrow Move the cursor to the last character of the text range \longrightarrow \bigcirc \longrightarrow $To Phone Book <math>\longrightarrow$ \bigcirc \longrightarrow $Add New or <math>Add \longrightarrow$ \bigcirc

- See "Creating Phone Book Entries" (page 2-18) about the following operations.
- If a selected item contains characters or symbols that cannot be saved to Phone Book, it won't be saved to Phone Book.

Reconvert Determined Text

In a text entry window, move the cursor to the first character of the text range \Rightarrow \overrightarrow{sa} \Rightarrow $Start \Rightarrow$ \bullet \Rightarrow Move the cursor to the last character of the text range \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow $Convert \Rightarrow$ \bullet

■Converting Hiragana to Kanji

Kana/Kanji \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow Select a word from the suggestion list \Rightarrow \bigcirc

- ■Converting All into Full/Half Width Full Width or Half Width ●
- ■Converting All Roman Characters into Upper/Lower Case

Upper Case or Lower Case → ●

Replace Text with Text on Clipboard

In a text entry window, move the cursor to the first character of the text range \Rightarrow \Rightarrow \Rightarrow \Rightarrow \Rightarrow \Rightarrow Move the cursor to the last character of the text range \Rightarrow \Rightarrow \Rightarrow Select the text to replace from the clipboard \Rightarrow \Rightarrow

Word List Functions

Delete All Words from the Word List

In a text entry window, $\begin{tabular}{ll} & \Rightarrow Customize \\ & \Rightarrow Word \ List \\ & \bullet \end{tabular} \rightarrow Delete \ All \\ & \bullet \end{tabular} \rightarrow \begin{tabular}{ll} & \bullet \\ & \bullet \end{tabular} \rightarrow \begin{tabular}{ll} & \bullet \\ & \bullet \end{tabular} \rightarrow \begin{tabular}{ll} & \bullet \\ & \bullet \end{tabular} \rightarrow \begin{tabular}{ll} & \bullet \\ & \bullet \end{tabular} \rightarrow \begin{tabular}{ll} & \bullet \\ & \bullet \end{tabular} \rightarrow \begin{tabular}{ll} & \bullet \\ & \bullet \end{tabular} \rightarrow \begin{tabular}{ll} & \bullet \\ & \bullet \end{tabular} \rightarrow \begin{tabular}{ll} & \bullet \\ & \bullet \end{tabular} \rightarrow \begin{tabular}{ll} & \bullet \\ & \bullet \end{tabular} \rightarrow \begin{tabular}{ll} & \bullet \\ & \bullet \end{tabular} \rightarrow \begin{tabular}{ll} & \bullet \\ & \bullet \end{tabular} \rightarrow \begin{tabular}{ll} & \bullet \\ & \bullet \end{tabular} \rightarrow \begin{tabular}{ll} & \bullet \\ & \bullet \end{tabular} \rightarrow \begin{tabular}{ll} & \bullet \\ & \bullet \end{tabular} \rightarrow \begin{tabular}{ll} & \bullet \\ & \bullet \end{tabular} \rightarrow \begin{tabular}{ll} & \bullet \\ & \bullet \end{tabular} \rightarrow \begin{tabular}{ll} & \bullet \\ & \bullet \end{tabular} \rightarrow \begin{tabular}{ll} & \bullet \\ & \bullet \end{tabular} \rightarrow \begin{tabular}{ll} & \bullet \\ & \bullet \end{tabular} \rightarrow \begin{tabular}{ll} & \bullet \\ & \bullet \end{tabular} \rightarrow \begin{tabular}{ll} & \bullet \\ & \bullet \end{tabular} \rightarrow \begin{tabular}{ll} & \bullet \\ & \bullet \end{tabular} \rightarrow \begin{tabular}{ll} & \bullet \\ & \bullet \end{tabular} \rightarrow \begin{tabular}{ll} & \bullet \\ & \bullet \end{tabular} \rightarrow \begin{tabular}{ll} & \bullet \\ & \bullet \end{tabular} \rightarrow \begin{tabular}{ll} & \bullet \\ & \bullet \end{tabular} \rightarrow \begin{tabular}{ll} & \bullet \\ & \bullet \end{tabular} \rightarrow \begin{tabular}{ll} & \bullet \\ & \bullet \end{tabular} \rightarrow \begin{tabular}{ll} & \bullet \\ & \bullet \end{tabular} \rightarrow \begin{tabular}{ll} & \bullet \\ & \bullet \end{tabular} \rightarrow \begin{tabular}{ll} & \bullet \\ & \bullet \end{tabular} \rightarrow \begin{tabular}{ll} & \bullet \\ & \bullet \end{tabular} \rightarrow \begin{tabular}{ll} & \bullet \\ & \bullet \end{tabular} \rightarrow \begin{tabular}{ll} & \bullet \\ & \bullet \end{tabular} \rightarrow \begin{tabular}{ll} & \bullet \\ & \bullet \end{tabular} \rightarrow \begin{tabular}{ll} & \bullet \\ & \bullet \end{tabular} \rightarrow \begin{tabular}{ll} & \bullet \\ & \bullet \end{tabular} \rightarrow \begin{tabular}{ll} & \bullet \\ & \bullet \end{tabular} \rightarrow \begin{tabular}{ll} & \bullet \\ & \bullet \end{tabular} \rightarrow \begin{tabular}{ll} & \bullet \\ & \bullet \end{tabular} \rightarrow \begin{tabular}{ll} & \bullet \\ & \bullet \end{tabular} \rightarrow \begin{tabular}{ll} & \bullet \\$

Phone Book

Phone Book Entry Functions

From Phone Book Entry Window page 2-18

Save Other Information

■Address/Job Title/Company

Phone Book Entry Window **Personal Info.** Select an item Enter an item

■Birthday

Phone Book Entry Window **Personal Info.** → • → **Birthday** → • → Enter a birthday → • → ⑤

• Enter four digits for the year and if the month or date is a single digit, prefix it with a 0.

URI

■Note

Phone Book Entry Window **Note** → ● Enter a reminder → ●

■Memory Number (Entry Number)

Phone Book Entry Window Select the current entry number → • → Enter a new entry number → •

Set Location Information

Phone Book Entry Window Personal Info. → • → No Location → •

■Setting from My Locations

List Location → Select location information → ○ → ⑤

■Setting from Picture File

My Pictures → • Select a file → •

Check Number of Entries

→Phone Book → • → Memory Status →• •

- Press
 \(\overline{\pi} \) (Count) / \(\overline{\pi} \) (Rate) to switch between the number of entries and the usage rate.
- When Secret Mode is set to *Hide*, the number of entries other than Secret entries is displayed.

Customize Ringtone Volume by Entry

Phone Book Entry Window Options → Solutions → Voice

Call, Video Call, Message, Circle Talk or

Notification → Ringtone Vol. → Adjust the

Volume → Solutions

Customize External Light/Vibration by Entry

Phone Book Entry Window Options • • Voice Call, Video Call, Message, Circle Talk or Notification • •

■External Light

ExternalLight $\Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow$ Select a color, OFF or Same as Phone $\Rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$

■Vibration

Vibration → Select a pattern, **OFF** or **Same as Phone** → (•)

Customize Ring Time for New Message/ Notification Ringtone by Entry

Phone Book Entry Window Options → → →

Message or Notification → → Duration →

→ Set Duration, 1 Cycle or Same as

Phone → → Enter a ring time → ●

Filter Messages by Entry

Phone Book Entry Window *Options* → → *Message* → → *MessageFolder* → →

Select a folder or *None* → ●

Set Caller/Sender Name to Appear on External Display by Entry

Phone Book Entry Window Options $\Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow Ext$.

Display $\Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow ON$, OFF or Same as Phone $\Rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$

Change the Incoming Event Operation Settings for Each Group

 \bigcirc > Phone Book \rightarrow \bigcirc > Group \rightarrow \bigcirc > Select a group \rightarrow \bigcirc > Options \rightarrow \bigcirc

• See "Setting Personal Ringtones" (page 2-19) about the following operations.

Managing Phone Book

Switch Phone Book (USIM/Handset/ Memory Card)

- \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigvee \rightarrow Change View \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Select a storage location \rightarrow \bigcirc
- The handset Phone Book ■, USIM Phone Book
 ■, and memory card Phone Book
 are displayed.

Sort Entries

 \bigcirc \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow Alphabet or Birthday \Rightarrow \bigcirc

Edit Phone Book

 \bigcirc → Select a Phone Book entry → \bigcirc → Select an item → \bigcirc → Edit the item → \bigcirc → \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc Save or Save as New → \bigcirc

Copy/Move Phone Book Entries

■Copying/Moving One Entry

② ⇒Select a Phone Book entry ⇒ ¬ Copy or Move ⇒ ○ → One ⇒ ○ → Phone Memory, USIM or Memory Card ⇒ ○

■Copying/Moving Multiple Entries

② → ¬ → Copy or Move → ○ → Select

Multi → ○ → Select Phone Book entries → ○
□ (Copy)/□ (Move) → Phone Memory,

USIM or Memory Card → ○

■Copying/Moving All Entries

② ⇒ ¬ Copy or Move ⇒ ⊕ → All → ⊕ → Phone Memory, USIM or Memory Card ⇒ ⊕

 The items you can save to Phone Book differ depending on the handset, USIM or memory card Phone Book.

Delete Phone Book Entries

■Deleting One Entry

Select a Phone Book entry → Delete
→ One → O⇒YES → O

■Deleting Multiple Entries

② → ¬Delete → ● ¬Select Multi →
● ¬Select Phone Book entries → □ →
YES → ●

■Deleting All Entries

 $\bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Delete \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow All \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Enter$ your Handset Code $\rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc$

Data Management

From Data Folder Window page 2-23

Functions for Checking Files

Change the Data Folder View

Data Folder Window Pictures, My Pictograms, Digital Camera, Videos, Books or Main Menu • • • Delta Change View • • View Type • • Select the view type •

Check File Properties

Data Folder Window Select a folder → Select a file → Details → ●

Check Available Memory (Data Folder/ Memory Card)

Data Folder Window *Memory Status* ⇒ ●

• Press or to toggle between the handset and memory card status.

Functions for Using Files

Use Picture Files

Access Data Folder from each function* \Rightarrow **Pictures** \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow Select a file \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow \bigcirc to compose the image \Rightarrow \bigcirc

- * See the following: Wallpaper settings (page 2-8), incoming call/message image settings (page 12-2), video call settings (page 12-20), Phone Book picture settings (page 2-19).
- For adjusting the picture size, see page 6-9.
- If a GIF animation is selected, only the first image (still image) is displayed.

Use Melody/Music/Video Files and Flash®

Access Data Folder from each function*→Ring Song*Tone, Music, Videos, Flash(R) or Flash(R) Tones → Select a file → (twice)

* See the following: Main Menu image settings (page 2-3), sound settings (page 12-9), Wallpaper settings (page 2-8), Event/Task/Reminder alarm tone settings (page 8-21), alarm tone settings (page 8-24), setting a different ringtone for each Phone Book entry (page 2-19).

Set a Keitaideco File to Change Icons/ Images Collectively

Data Folder Window **Keitaideco** → Select a file → **O** → **YES** → **O**

Use vObjects

- By converting data such as Phone Book entries, Calendar events and Task data into vObject file format, you can exchange those data with other vObject compatible SoftBank handsets and PCs.
- vObject compatible software is required to use vObjects on a PC or other device.

- When a vObject includes many characters, some of the data may not be able to be sent or received.
- Depending on the software used, vObjects may not be displayed properly.

■Creating a vObject

Display Phone Book (page 2-17)/Calendar (page 8-4)/Tasks (page 8-5)/Message (page 4-2)/
Bookmark (page 5-6)/Notepad (page 8-9)
Select data to be saved as vObject \(\nabla \) \(\nabla \)
\(Export \(\nabla \) \(\nabla \) One \(\nabla \) \(\nabla \) Phone Memory, \(Data Folder \) \(\nabla \) \(\nabla \) Select a folder \(\nabla \) \(\nabla \)

- To save multiple data, do the following.

 While data is displayed, ❤️ Export ●

 Select Multi ● Select files ●

 (Save)/(⑤ (Export)
- To save all data, do the following.
 While data is displayed, ♥ ⇒ Export ⇒ ●
 All ⇒ ●

■Importing a vObject into a Function

Data Folder Window Other Documents → ● →
Select a vObject → ☑ → To Phone Book, To
Cal./Tasks, To Message, To Bookmarks or
To Notepad → ● → One → ●

To import multiple vObjects, do the following.
 Select Multi → Select vObjects → →

2

Managing Files/Folders

Change Folder and File Names

■Changing Folder Name

Data Folder Window Select the folder you created → Rename Folder → Enter a folder name → ●

 If Security Lock is set to the folder, Handset Code entry is required after selecting *Rename* Folder.

■Changing File Name

Data Folder Window Select a file → \(\bar{\pi}\) → Rename → \(\bar{\phi}\) → Enter a file name → \(\bar{\phi}\)

 If you change the file name for a music or movie file, the title will not be changed as titles are independent of file names.

Change File Order

Data Folder Window Select a folder → ① → Select a file → ☑ → Change View → ① → Sort by → ② → Select the sort criteria → ①

• Files in the memory card cannot be sorted by titles.

Move a Folder

Data Folder Window Select the folder you created → Wove Folder → Enter your Handset Code

 When moving a folder created in Ring Song • Tone or Music, select Phone Memory or Memory Card, and then Ring Song •Tone or Music.

Copy Folders and Files

■Copying a Folder

Data Folder Window Select the folder you created → Vincolor Phone Select the folder you created → Vincolor Phone Memory or Memory Card → (•)

When copying a folder created in Ring Song
 Tone or Music, select the destination folder from Ring Song
 Tone or Music.

■Copying One File

Data Folder Window Select a folder → Select a file → D → Select a file → D → Copy → One → D → Phone Memory or Memory Card → Select the destination folder → O

■Copying Multiple Files

■Copying All Files

Data Folder Window Select a folder → ● → ► → ► Copy → ● → All → ● → Enter your Handset Code → Phone Memory or Memory Card →

- Select the destination folder⇒
- If Details indicate that the file is *Unavailable* for forwarding, the file cannot be copied.
 However, some files in *My Pictograms* folder may be able to be copied even if Details indicate that they are *Unavailable* for forwarding.
- When you copy a still picture file taken in Digital mode to the memory card, or a file in MPEG-4 format (.3GP and .MP4) to another folder, select the fixed folder first and then select the destination folder.

Delete Folders and Files

■Deleting a Folder

Data Folder Window Select the folder you created → Delete Folder → ● Enter your Handset Code → YES → ●

■Deleting One File

Data Folder Window Select a folder $\rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$ Select a file $\rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Delete \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow One \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow YES \rightarrow$

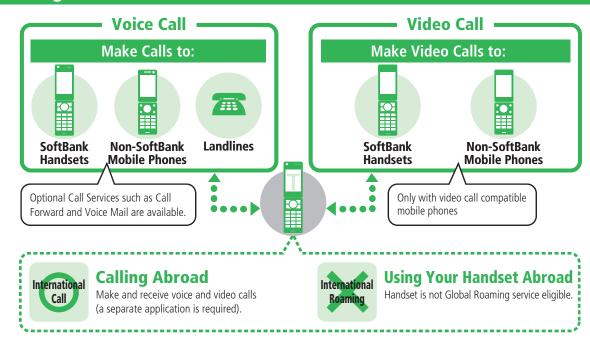
■Deleting Multiple Files

■Deleting All Files

Data Folder Window Select a folder → • → → → → Delete → • → All → • → Enter your Handset Code → YES → •

Making Calls · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
Voice Call·····	3-4
Answering Machine · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	3-5
Video Call · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	3-7
Call Log · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	3-9
Viewing Dialed Numbers and Received Calls · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	3-9
Optional Services · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	3-10
Using Optional Call Services · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	3-10
Advanced Features · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	3-13

ä



Checking Your Phone Number

Press ● → Phone Book → ● →
My Details → ●



• To check your phone number during a call: Press ➤ during a call → My Details → •

About Emergency Calls

Emergency calls (110 (police), 119 (fire and ambulance) and 118 (coast guard)) are available, even when Password Lock and/or Call Barring is active.

• If a video call is made to an emergency service, the call becomes a voice call.

Emergency Call Location Notification

Caller's location is notified to emergency agencies for emergency calls (110, 119 and 118). This handset sends location information calculated using positioning information from a communicating base station*.

- *If handset signal is received by a distant base station, location information may not be accurate.
- Location notification may be inaccurate, depending on the caller's location and signal strength.
- This system may not operate if the responding agency has not installed the proper system.
- If emergency numbers (110, 118 and 119) are dialed with the 184 prefix, location information is not provided. However, emergency agencies may retrieve location information in lifethreatening cases.
- No application fees or connection fees apply.

More Features



Functions for Saving My Details

(**p**age 3-13)



Making a Voice Call

This section explains how to make a voice call in Japan.

1 Enter a phone number

- Include the area code for all numbers.
 Press or press and hold or delete the entire number and return to Standby.
 Press or press and return to Standby.
- entered.For details on making a call from Phone Book, see page 2-20.



Dial Window

2 Press 🖊



Voice Call Window

- Use ③ during a call to adjust the earpiece volume.
- 3 Press 🚾 to end the call
- Antenna is built into the handset. Signal sensitivity may be reduced by touching/ covering Internal Antenna area (page 1-3).
 Do not cover this area by affixing stickers, or any other items. Doing so may prevent you from making/receiving calls, sending/ receiving messages or accessing the Web.
- The orientation and location of the handset may affect signal strength.
- When Cost Limit is set and the limit is reached, outgoing voice calls are blocked. If the limit is reached during a call, the call ends.

Answering a Voice Call

The handset notifies you of incoming voice calls by incoming image, External Light and Twinkle Light as well as ringtone or vibration.

- Press 🖊 🔎 when a call is received
 - Use (3) to adjust the ringtone volume while receiving an incoming call.
 - To stop the ringtone while receiving an incoming call, press and hold •.
- Press 🕦 to end the call

Speed Dial

You can make a call to a phone number saved in the handset Phone Book by pressing just the last one or two digits of the entry number 0000 to 0099 and then pressing .

- 1 Enter the last two digits of the entry number 0010 to 0099⇒ ✓
 - For entry numbers 0000 through 0009, enter the last digit only and press .

<u>പ</u>

Making an International Call

This section explains how to make an international call from Japan.

- A separate application is required for using the international call service. For details, contact SoftBank General Information (page 13-45).
- The handset does not support international roaming, so it cannot be used outside of Japan.
- Intl. Calls → ●



Country Number List Window

- 2 Select a country→●→✓
- 3 Press 🚎 to end the call

Answering Machine

Record a caller's message to your handset when you are unable to answer a voice call.

Press and hold

When you cannot answer the call, the outgoing message plays and recording starts.

- When recording capacity becomes full or the call ends, it stops automatically.
- To cancel Answering Machine, press and hold [177].
- Press and hold or to activate Answering Machine while receiving an incoming call.
- Answering Machine is not available for video calls and Call Waiting.
- When five messages are recorded, Answering Machine is disabled. Do the following to delete messages.

Press Select a message Delete

Select a message Delete

- Messages may not be recorded when an S! Appli is set as the Screensaver.
- When Manner Mode is set in Original Mode, Answering Machine setting in Original Mode is given priority. To set or cancel Answering Machine while in Original Mode, change the Answering Machine setting in Original Mode.

Playing Messages

Press → Select a message → ●



More Features



Outgoing Call Functions (page 3-13) **Outgoing Voice Call Functions**

(page 3-14)

Incoming Call Functions (▶ page 3-14) **Answering Machine Functions**

(page 3-14)

Functions During Voice/Video Calls

(page 3-14)

Functions During Voice Calls

(page 3-15)



Response Settings for Incoming Calls

(page 12-7)

- Answer Incoming Calls by Opening the Handset (Open to Talk)
- Set Any Key Answer

Answering Machine Settings

(page 12-7)

Set the Answering Machine Response Time

International Call Settings

(page 12-19)

- Change the International Code
- Add Country Codes to the Country Number List

Earphone-Microphone Settings

(page 12-21)

- Save a Phone Number for Earphone-Microphone Call
- Set Auto Answer

Video Call

Make video calls with another party. The other party must use a video call compatible handset. You can switch between the main and sub cameras, or send a still picture instead of live image now being taken.

Making a Video Call

Enter a phone number and press



2 Press 💿



Video Call Window

- Use 🗘 during a call to adjust the speaker (earpiece) volume.
- 3 Press 🚎 to end the call

 When Cost Limit is set and the limit is reached, outgoing video calls are blocked. If the limit is reached during a call, the call ends

Video Call Icons

- Video Call
- Mute My Voice
- Mute All
- Faster Moving Mode
- Standard Mode
- **Better Picture Mode** Handsfree ON
- M Image Transfer OFF
- Sending Picture
- Voice Connection Established
- Video Connection Established

Answering a Video Call

The handset notifies you of incoming video calls by incoming image, External Light and Twinkle Light as well as ringtone or vibration.

Press / / when a video call is received

> A confirmation window appears. Select YES and press • to send out your live image.

- Press (6) while the handset is ringing/vibrating to view yourself before sending your live image.
- Press 🚎 to end the call

More Features



Outgoing Call Functions (page 3-13)
Incoming Call Functions (page 3-14)
Incoming Video Call Functions

(page 3-14)

Functions During Voice/Video Calls

(page 3-14)

Functions During Video Calls

(Page 3-16)



Video Call Settings

(page 12-20)

- Set Alternative Picture
- Set Self-view Confirmation
- Set Incoming Image Quality
- Add a Phone Number to Auto Answer List
- Set Mute
- Set Audio Output
- Set Hold Image

Viewing Dialed Numbers and Received Calls

Press ⊚/⊙



Call Log Window

- Press / to switch between outgoing call log and incoming call log.
- Press (land) to switch between outgoing S! Circle Talk call log and voice/ video call log.
- Press (4 4) to switch between incoming S! Circle Talk call log and voice/ video call log.

More Features



Call Log Functions (▶ p Functions for Call Time and Cost

(page 3-16)

(page 3-16)



Call Cost Settings

(page 12-19)

- Set Cost Display Currency
- Display Call Cost After Each Call
- Set Cost Limit

Using Optional Call Services

- For details on services, contact SoftBank General Information (page 13-45).
- If you are out of the service area, you cannot operate the service from the handset.

Call Forward	Use this service to forward calls to a preset phone number.
Voice Mail	This service allows a caller to leave a message at the Voice Mail Center when your handset is out of range or a call is in progress (page 3-11).
Call Waiting*	This service allows you to place a call on hold to receive another incoming call (page 3-17).
Multiparty Call [*]	Make or receive a call during a call and talk to multiple parties simultaneously (page 3-17).
Call Barring	Stop all outgoing and incoming calls including international calls (page 3-18).
Caller ID	This service allows you to notify your phone number to the other party when you make a call and allows you to confirm the phone number of a caller (page 3-13).

^{*}You must apply separately for Call Waiting and Multiparty Call services. For details, contact SoftBank General Information (page 13-45).

Activating Call Forward

Example: Forwarding calls to a phone number saved in Phone Book when there is No. Answer

Press \bullet \Rightarrow Settings \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow Call Settings ⇒ (•) ⇒ Call Services ⇒ (•)



Call Services Setting Window

2 Select *Diverting* ⇒ ●



Diverting Window

- 3 Select *Diverts ON* → Select a type of call⇒(•)
- Select No Answer \Rightarrow \bullet) \Rightarrow Set the response time → •
 - Select All Calls to forward without sounding the ringtone.



- 5 Select *Phone Book* → Select an entry → (•) → Select a phone number → (•) (twice)
 - To enter a phone number directly: Select **Phone Number** \Rightarrow \bigcirc Enter a phone number → ((twice)
 - To save a phone number from Call Log: Select *Call Log* → Select an entry → (twice)
- 6 Connect to the network



7 Press

O

Activating Voice Mail

Example: Using Voice Mail if there is No Answer

From Diverting Window, select *Voicemail* $ON \Rightarrow \bullet$



- 2 Select No Answer → Set the response time → ●
- 3 Connect to the network



4 Press

O

- Call Forward and Voice Mail cannot be set simultaneously, but Call Forward for video calls is available with Voice Mail.
- If you activate Call Forward or Voice Mail while either one is activated, the first activated service will be deactivated.
- Receiving Calls After Activating Call Forward/Voice Mail
 Press while the ringtone is sounding to talk to the caller. If you set All Calls, the handset does not receive calls, but they are forwarded to the preset phone number or Voice Mail Center
- Voice Mail Service Options
 Access the Personal Options menu from Voice Mail Center to set/customize outgoing message. For details, contact SoftBank General Information (page 13-45).

Missed Call Notification

Information Prompt notifies you about the calls that the handset could not receive because it was out of the service area or the power was off while Voice Mail was set. If Voice Mail Center receives a message while you are on another line, the handset receives a notification.



Follow the voice prompts.

Optional Services

Listening to Your Voice Mail

From Diverting Window, select *Listen VM* ⇒ (•)

3 <u>ല</u>

Deactivating Call Forward/Voice Mail

From Diverting Window, select

DeactivateAll → ●

- If you select *DeactivateAll*, both Call Forward and Voice Mail are deactivated.
- If you are not using Call Forward or Voice Mail, do one of the following to reject a call.

 · When a voice call is received, press (Divert)
- · When a video call is received, press \Rightarrow Divert

More Features *

Functions for Optional Call Services

(page 3-17)

Advanced Features

Making Calls

From Dial Window page 3-4 Voice Call Window page 3-4 Video Call Window page 3-7

Functions for Saving My Details

Save Information to My Details [Save My Details]

■Entering a Name

● Phone Book → ● My Details → ●
Name → ● → Select an item → □ → Edit →
● → Enter a name → ● → □ (twice)

Use the Location Information from My Details

[Personal Info.]

- Phone Book My Details ● Personal Info. Location Exist > □ Open Map, Location Mail, Add Location of Delete ●
- To save a location, select *Personal Info.* and then do the following.

No Location → \(\sigma\) → Add Location → (\infty)

Outgoing Call Functions

Redial

[Dialed Numbers]

- \odot \Rightarrow Select an entry \Rightarrow \nearrow \Rightarrow to end the call
- To make a video call, select an entry and then press ...
- To make an S! Circle Talk call, press and hold
 when My Status is *Online* (page 9-4).

Call from Received Calls

[Received Calls]

Select an entry → ✓ → ≡ to end the call

• To make a video call, select an entry and then press ...

Send/Hide Caller ID

[Show My ID]

Dial Window → Hide My ID or Show My ID → •

Set Earpiece Volume

[Earpiece Volume]

Set Caller ID On/Off

[Show My Number]

- Settings → Call Settings → Show My Number → Select Show My

 ID, Hide My ID or OFF → ●
- If you select OFF, the settings you chose when you subscribed to Caller ID service apply.
- Caller ID setting has the following options, and they are given priority in the order of ① to ③ if they are all set or operated.
- ① Dial Window → Hide My ID or Show My ID → ●
- ② Setting for Show My Number
- ③ Application for Caller ID service

3

Outgoing Voice Call Functions

Make Calls Using Earphone-Microphone [Earphone-Microphone Call]

- Save a phone number for Earphone-Microphone call in advance (page 12-21).

 Insert the plug of Earphone-Microphone into the Earphone Microphone Jack → Press and hold the microphone switch → Press and hold the microphone switch to end the call
- Press and hold the switch again to cancel dialing.
- Alternatively, press to end the call.

Incoming Call Functions

Reject an Incoming Call

[Reject Calls]

when a call is received

• To reject an incoming video call, press \(\sigma \) and select \(Reject Call \).

Hold an Incoming Call

[Hold Answer]

when a voice or video call is received

- The caller is charged for the call while placed on hold.
- Pressing while the caller is on hold terminates the call

Answer Calls with Earphone-Microphone [Earphone-Microphone Answer]

Insert the plug of Earphone-Microphone into the Earphone Microphone Jack Press and hold the microphone switch when a call is received Press and hold the microphone switch to end the call

• Alternatively, press ro end the call.

Answering Machine Functions

Delete Recorded Messages

Incoming Video Call Functions

Answer Incoming Video Calls Automatically

[Auto Answer]

 When Auto Answer is set to ON, video calls received from phone numbers on the Auto Answer List are answered automatically without having to press a key, if the handset is open.

- Regardless of Manner Mode setting, the speaker will beep and the video call is automatically connected.

Functions During Voice/Video Calls

Mute Audio During a Call

[Mute]

■Voice Calls

Voice Call Window ► Mute My Voice or Mute All • •

■Video Calls

Video Call Window \longrightarrow Mute \longrightarrow \longrightarrow Mute My Voice or Mute All \longrightarrow \bigcirc

Press to cancel the mute during a call.

Place a Call on Hold

[Hold Call]

Voice Call Window / Video Call Window

 (\bullet)

\forall \rightarrow Hold \rightarrow \rightarrow Hold \rightarrow \rightarrow Hold \rightarrow \rightarrow Hold \rightarrow \rightarrow Hold \rightarrow \rightarrow Hold \rightarrow \rightarrow Hold \rightarrow \rightarrow Hold \rightarrow \rightarrow Hold \rightarrow \rightarrow Hold \rightarrow \rightarrow Hold \rightarrow \rightarrow Hold \rightarrow \rightarrow Hold \rightarrow \rightarrow Hold \rightarrow \rightarrow Hold \rightarrow \rightarrow \rightarrow Hold \rightarrow \rightarrow Hold \rightarrow \rightarrow Hold \rightarrow \rightarrow Hold \rightarrow \rightarrow \rightarrow Hold \rightarrow \rightarrow Hold \rightarrow \rightarrow Hold \rightarrow \rightarrow \rightarrow Hold \rightarrow \r

 Subscription to Call Waiting (page 3-17) or Multiparty Call (page 3-17) is required to use the Hold feature for voice calls. For details. contact SoftBank General Information (page 13-45).

Functions During Voice Calls

Record the Other Party's Voice During a Call

[Record Voice Memo]

Voice Call Window \\ \rightarrow \rightarrow Voice Record \rightarrow \(\blacktree \)

- Recording stops when the maximum time is reached or the call ends. To stop recording manually, press (•).
- To play a recording, do the following. \bullet \rightarrow $Tools <math>\rightarrow$ \bullet \rightarrow $Useful\ Tools <math>\rightarrow$ \bullet \rightarrow *Voice Recorder* \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow *Recordings* \Rightarrow \bullet ⇒Phone Memory of Memory Card ⇒ • ⇒Select a file⇒(•)

Save Number Memo During a Call [Save Number Memo]

Voice Call Window Press the keys on the keypad

- After the call ends, the number memo is automatically saved.
- You can enter the following numbers and symbols.

0 to 9. \(\frac{1}{2}\), \(\frac{1}{2}\), \(\frac{1}{2}\), \(\frac{1}{2}\).

• To check a number memo, do the following. \bullet \rightarrow $Tools \rightarrow \bullet$ \rightarrow $Useful Tools \rightarrow \bullet$ \rightarrow *Number Memo* → Select a number memo⇒●

Use Handsfree Call

[Handsfree Call]

Voice Call Window

To cancel handsfree, press (♥).

Send Touch Tones During a Call [Send Touch Tones]

■ Sending Individual Touch Tones

and # EN

■Sending Touch Tones Sequentially

• Phone Book is useful for storing sequences of touch tones (page 2-18) for remotely operating your home answering machine and other devices

Voice Call Window \triangleright Phone Book \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow Select a Phone Book entry → Select a touch tone sequence (phone number) $\Rightarrow \searrow Send$ Tone ⇒ (•)

■Using Pause (P) in Touch Tone Sequences

• The pause "P" allows you to send sequences of touch tones, each separated with a pause "P". It is convenient if you register multiple touch tones such as remote operation numbers of your home phone.

Example: To store 03123XXXX3 (phone number). #7777 (answering machine access code), and #1 (answering machine playback command), enter the following in the Phone Number field. 03123XXXX3P#7777P#1

Open a Phone Book entry containing the touch tones (A call is made to the phone number before the first "P") \Rightarrow (The sequence of touch tones before the next "P" is sent)

• Repeat this step until all the touch tones have heen sent.

Functions During Video Calls

Toggle Audio Output (Earpiece/Speaker) [Switch Audio]

Video Call Window

(♠)/﴿
)

Zoom Outgoing Image

[Zoom]

Video Call Window

 Zoom is unavailable when a still picture is set for outgoing image.

Toggle Main and Sub Cameras [Switch Cameras]

Video Call Window (Switch)

Switch Outgoing/Incoming Image Windows

[Switch Windows]

Video Call Window → Screen Set. → → Switch → ● → In. Prior, Incoming Only, Out. Prior of Outgoing Only → ●

Set a Still Picture as the Outgoing Image [Send Picture]

Video Call Window ► Send Picture → • → Send Pic. ON → • → Phone Memory or

Memory Card → • Select a picture → •

 The handset automatically cuts off the part of the selected picture that cannot be displayed to adjust the size.

Change Alternative Picture

[Alternative Picture]

Video Call Window ► Alt. Picture → • Alt. Pic. ON → •

■Selecting the Image Preinstalled in the Handset

Preset → •

■ Selecting an Image from Data Folder/ Memory Card

Phone Memory or Memory Card → ● → Select an image → ●

 The handset automatically cuts off the part of the selected picture that cannot be displayed to adjust the size.

Change Incoming Image Quality [Image Quality]

Video Call Window → Screen Set. → →

Image Quality → → Select the image output format → ●

Call Log Functions

From Call Log Window page 3-9

Delete Call Log Records

[Delete/Delete All]

■Deleting a Record

Call Log Window Select a record → \(\bar{\pi} \) → \(Delete \) → \(\bar{\pi} \) \(\bar{\p

■Deleting All Records

Call Log Window PDelete Delete

All O Delete Delete

All O Delete

All O Delete

All O Delete

All O Delete

All O Delete

All O Delete

Lock Call Log

[Call Log Lock]

Call Log Window ► Call Log Lock ► ►

Enter your Handset Code ► Lock ► ●

To cancel the lock, select Unlock.

Functions for Call Time and Cost

View Call Time and Cost

[Call Time & Cost]

● Settings → ● Call Settings → ● → Call Time&Cost → ● All Calls or Last Call → ● Time or Cost → ●

 The displayed call time/cost serves as a guide only. The actual call cost billed may be different.

- The total call time does not include mail communications, Web browsing, and S! Circle Talk connection and talk time.
- Up to 277 hours 46 minutes and 39 seconds can be displayed for the total call time.
- Sum of charges appears for Multiparty Call.
- The total call cost does not include mail communication and Web browsing charges, and the charge for the number of remarks made during S! Circle Talk.
- When you make an international call, the call cost is not displayed.
- Call Cost may be unavailable depending on your subscription. In that case, the total cost display and cost limit settings are not available.

Reset Total Call Time

Reset Total Call Cost

● Settings → Call Settings → →
Call Time&Cost → ● All Calls → →
Cost → ● → → Reset → ● Enter your
PIN2 (page 13-2) → ● → YES → ●

Functions for Optional Call Services

From Voice Call Window page 3-4

Call Services Setting Window page 3-10

Diverting Window page 3-10

Optional Call Service Setting Status

Check Optional Service Setting Status [Status]

■Checking Call Forward/Voice Mail Status

Diverting Window **Status** ⇒ ●

■Checking Call Waiting Status

Call Services Setting Window Call Waiting → →

Status → •

■Checking Call Barring Status

Call Services Setting Window Call Barring → ● → Status → ● → All Outgoings, All Out-Intl., Out-Intl., All Incomings of All If Roamed → ●

Call Waiting

Set Call Waiting

[Call Waiting On/Off]

Call Services Setting Window Call Waiting $\Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow$ ON or OFF $\Rightarrow \bigcirc$

Answer an Incoming Call During a Call [Call Waiting]

During a call, the Call Waiting tone is heard → Answer → ●

Switch Between Two Callers [Switch Parties]

- Press [→]

 To switch between parties.
- If a caller terminates a call during Call Waiting, a ringtone sounds and *Holding*. is displayed.
 Press to start talking with the other person on hold.

Multiparty Call

Call Another Party

[Call During a Call]

Voice Call Window Enter a phone number → ✓
 Alternatively, press ⋈ and select an entry from Phone Book (page 2-20) or Call Log (page 3-9).

Switch Between Parties

[Switch Parties]

Voice Call Window Enter a phone number → ✓ → When the other party answers, [2.5] ✓

- Press Press I to switch between parties.
- If a caller terminates a call during a call, a ringtone sounds and *Holding*. is displayed.
 Press / to start talking with another person on hold.

Talk to Multiple Parties

[Multiparty Call]

Voice Call Window Enter a phone number → ✓ →
When the other party answers, ¬ → Multiparty
→ ● → Multiparty → ●

- During a multiparty call, press to end the call with all parties simultaneously.
- If one person ends the call during a multiparty call, the other parties remain connected.
- To talk to just one person during a multiparty call:

Select a party to talk with → \(\begin{align*}
\blue \blue \rightarrow \rightarrow Multiparty
\blue \blue \rightarrow \rightarrow Private \rightarrow \blue \rightarrow \limits \rightarrow \rightarrow Multiparty

Call Barring

Restrict Outgoing and Incoming Voice/ Video Calls and SMS Messages [Call Barring]

Call Services Setting Window Call Barring

- Restricting Outgoing Calls and SMS

 Outgoing Call → → All Outgoings, All

 Out-Intl. or Out-Intl. * → → Enter your Call

 Barring Service Code (page 1-13) → Connect to
 the network automatically → ●
- ■Restricting Incoming Calls and SMS

 Incoming Call → → All Incomings or All

 If Roamed* → ⇒ Enter your Call Barring

 Service Code → Connect to the network

 automatically → ●
- * The handset does not support international roaming, but settings are saved to the service center.

■Deactivating Call Barring

Cancel All → ● ⇒Enter your Call Barring
Service Code ⇒Connect to the network
automatically ⇒ ●

- After connecting to the network, a setting completed window appears. If the window does not appear, follow the procedure again.
- You can still make emergency calls (110 (police), 119 (fire and ambulance) and 118 (coast quard)) when Call Barring is activated.

- You cannot use All Outgoings and All Incomings if you have started using the Call Forward or Voice Mail service (Call Forward or Voice Mail takes priority).
- If Call Barring Service Code is incorrectly entered three consecutive times, Call Barring settings are locked. Change Call Barring Service Code and Center Access Code (page 1-13). For details, contact SoftBank General Information (page 13-45).

Change Call Barring Service Code [Call Barring Service Code]

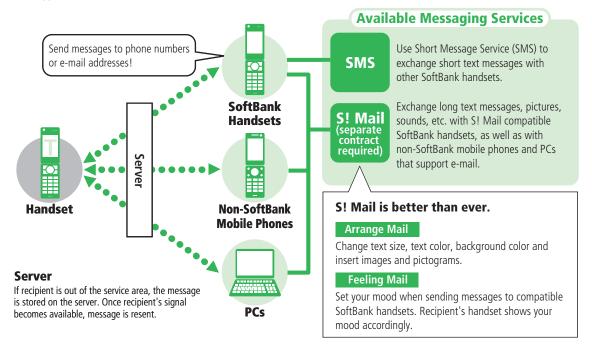
Call Services Setting Window Call Barring → Security Code → Enter your current Call Barring Service Code → Enter your new Call Barring Service Code → Re-enter your new Call Barring Service Code for confirmation → ●

 After connecting to the network, a setting completed window appears. If the window does not appear, follow the procedure again.

Messaging · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	-2
Message Types····· 4	-2
Customizing Handset Address · · · · · 4	-3
Sending Messages······4	-4
Sending S! Mail · · · · · · · · · · · · 4	-4
Sending SMS · · · · · 4	-6
Incoming Messages·····4	-8
Opening New Messages · · · · · · 4	-8
Checking Received Messages · · · · · 4	-8
Replying to Messages · · · · · 4	9
Organizing/Using Messages ······4-	10
Organizing/Using Received and Sent Messages · · · · · 4-	10
Sorting Messages · · · · 4-	11
Advanced Features · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	13

Message Types

Handset supports S! Mail (MMS) and SMS.



Customizing Handset Address

Change the account name (part before @) of your handset e-mail address.

- _____@softbank.ne.jp
- For details, contact SoftBank General Information (page 13-45).
- This operation uses Yahoo! Keitai access.
- Before using Messaging service, retrieve network connection information (page 1-10).
- A random alphanumeric text string is assigned at the time of contract. Composing a long e-mail address using single-byte alphanumerics and available symbols is an effective way for preventing spam.





- 2 Select オリジナルメール設定(メール各種定)(Original Mail/Mail settings) →
 - Follow the onscreen instructions.

Sending S! Mail



Create Message Window

2 Select Address → ●



Set Address Window

3 Select *Phone Number* or *Email* → ● →
Enter a phone number/e-mail address
→ ●



- To select an address from Phone Book: Select *Phone Book* → Select an entry → Select a phone number/ e-mail address → ●
- 4 Select Subject → ⇒Enter a subject → ●



5 Select Text ⇒ • ⇒Enter text ⇒ •



- - If you select Notify Only Once in the sending confirmation/completed window, the window will not be displayed from the next time.

- If you enter an e-mail address or input text that cannot be sent by SMS, the mail type automatically changes to S! Mail.
- If the other party's handset doesn't support
 Mail, it might be displayed differently.

Attaching Files

Attach an image or melody to an S! Mail.

From Create Message Window, select



Attachments Window

2 Select Data Folder ⇒ ● Phone
Memory or Memory Card ⇒ ●



3 Select a folder→ ● ⇒ Select a file → ●



 Some files may not be able to be attached to a message. To find out whether a certain file can be attached or not, check Details of the file (page 2-32).

Feeling Mail

Feeling Mail can notify the recipient of arrival of a message by special graphics expressing the sender's mood that appear in the Information Prompt, as well as by ringtone, vibration and External Light.

- Reception operations of incoming Feeling Mail vary according to the recipient's SoftBank handset.



2 Select a pictograph⇒⊙



 If you send a message with Feeling Mail graphics to a handset that doesn't support Feeling Mail, the graphics will be displayed as a regular pictograph in the subject field.

Arrange Mail

This function allows you to make your message more visually appealing by changing the size and color of text, background color, assigning actions to text, and inserting lines or images into text.

Example: Changing the font size and background color, and inserting a picture

- From Create Message Window, select

 Text → ●
- 2 Press ¬→Arrange → •



Arrange Window

To decorate text using a mail template:
 Press → Templates → Phone
 Memory or Memory Card → →
 Select a template → → Edit text → ●

3 Select *Font Size* → (•)



4 Select a font size → ● Input text



5 Press → Arrange → • →
ScreenColor → •



6 Select a background color⇒●



Press ¬→Arrange → •→Picture →
•→Phone Memory or Memory Card
•••



- B Select a folder→ ⇒ Select an image
 •
- If you select a mail template after entering text, a confirmation window appears. Select YES to discard the entered text for using the template.

Sending SMS

Send short text messages of up to 70 double-byte characters to other SoftBank handsets using phone numbers as address.



Create Message Window





3 Select Address → •



Set Address Window

4 Select *Phone Number* → ● ⇒Enter a phone number → ●



 To select a phone number from Phone Book:

Select **Phone Book** → Select an entry → Select a phone number → Select a phone number → Select an entry → Select an entry → Select a phone number → Select an entry → Select



 If you select Notify Only Once in the sending confirmation/completed window, the window will not be displayed from the next time.

More Features



Creating Messages (page 4-13)
Attaching Files (page 4-14)
Arrange Mail Functions (page 4-15)
Outgoing Message Functions
(page 4-15)



Messaging Settings (► page 12-11)

- Add Recipients to Simple Input List
- Set Groups
- Set a Signature
- Set Default Mail Type
- Display/Hide Notification When Mail Type is Switched

Outgoing Messages (page 12-12)

- Set the Sending Confirmation Window
- Set the Vibration When Sending is Confirmed
- Check Whether Sent Messages were Delivered to Recipients
- Set the Length of Time Sent Messages are Stored on Server Mail Box
- Set Message Priority
- Specify a Time Before Delivering Messages to Recipients
- Save a Reply Address

Opening New Messages

When a message arrives, ringtone sounds and animation plays. When a "Feeling Mail" arrives, graphics indicating the sender's mood appears in the background of Information Prompt. Incoming messages are saved to *Received*.

Check Information Prompt to confirm any unread messages. When you have more than one unread Feeling Mail, background graphics will be that of the most recent message.

- When you receive an S! Mail message, the reception method varies depending on the message size or whether there are any attachments. The reception method is set to *Immediate* at time of purchase so that all the data is downloaded automatically. The reception method can be changed to *Phone # Only* or *Deferred* (page 12-13).
- Information Prompt appears



2 Select New Messages ⇒ ●

3 Select a folder → • Select a message

• •



- To retrieve new messages from the server: Press → Retrieve Msg. → •
- If Priority is set to *Pause*, incoming messages are notified by a confirmation window during handset use (except in Standby). Choose *Read Now*, *Read Later* or *Delete*.

Checking Received Messages



2 Select a folder → • Select a message → •

- If Retrieve Mode is set to *Deferred*, the initial portion of text is delivered as an S! Mail notification and complete message is stored on the Server Mail Box in one of the following cases:
 - Text exceeds 284 single-byte characters (284 bytes)
 - · Files are attached
 - · Message is sent to multiple addresses
 - Subject field contains 41 or more singlebyte characters
 - Sender's address contains 61 or more single-byte characters
- If you receive the rest of the message, transmission fees may be charged on the recipient's side. For details, contact SoftBank General Information (page 13-45).
- It may be impossible to display/play a file until you obtain a content key (content license) depending on the file.
- Messages exceeding 300 KB cannot be fully retrieved, part of them is deleted.

Replying to Messages

The Create Message Window opens and the recipient's address is automatically set.

 When replying to an S! Mail, the subject to which Re: is prefixed is automatically inserted in the subject field.

Example: Replying by creating new text

- Press

 → Message Box → Received
- Select a folder → Select a message → → ☞ (Reply)



3 Select Blank → ●



- To reply to the sender of a message with multiple addresses, select *To Sender* or *To All*.
- To reply by quoting the received message text, select *With Text*; to reply by referring to the received text, select *Refer*.

More Features



Receiving Messages (▶ page 4-16)
Server Mail Box Operations
(▶ page 4-16)



Display Settings

- (page 12-12)
- Set the Font Size
- Set the Scroll Unit
- Display/Hide Address and Subject When Sending/Receiving Messages

Incoming Messages

- (page 12-13)
- Set New Message Retrieve Mode
- Set Automatic Display of Picture Files
- Set Automatic Playback of Sound Files
- Set Spam Filter
- Set a Folder for Spam Messages

3D Pictograms

(page 12-13)

- Set the Criteria for Displaying Received Messages with 3D Pictograms
- Set the Font and Background Colors for 3D Pictograms

and Sent Messages

Received and sent messages are saved to the **Received** and **Sent** message folders respectively. Created messages that have not been sent are saved to **Drafts**, and messages that have failed to be sent are saved to *Unsent Msg.*.

About Auto-delete

If Message Box memory is full, the oldest message is deleted when receiving/sending a new message. Set Protect (page 4-17) to save important messages. Alternatively, set Auto-delete (page 12-14) to **Do not Set**. However, when memory is full, a warning appears and appears in Standby, Delete unnecessary messages to receive new messages (page 4-18).

 When unable to receive S! Mail notifications due to insufficient memory, delete unnecessary messages. Once memory space becomes available. S! Mail notifications are redelivered by Retry function. Alternatively. retrieve Mail List (page 4-16) to receive the notifications. For details on redelivery of S! Mail notifications, contact SoftBank General Information (page 13-45).





Message Box List Window

2 Select Received or Sent ⇒Select a folder **→** (•)



Message List Window

Outet2 and Status

UMessage Status			
	Unread Message with Attachment(s)		
\rangle	Unread Message without Attachments		
	Read Message with Attachment(s)		
	Read Message without Attachments		
	Unread S! Mail Notification		
	Read S! Mail Notification		
	Sent Message with Attachment(s)/Read Delivery Report		
	Sent Message without Attachments/Read Delivery Report		
	Sent Message with Attachment(s)/ Unread Delivery Report		
	Sent Message without Attachments/ Unread Delivery Report		
	Sent Message with Attachment(s)/ Confirming Delivery		
"	Sent Message without Attachments/ Confirming Delivery		
	Sent Message with Attachment(s)/No Delivery Confirmation		
M	Sent Message without Attachments/No Delivery Confirmation		
	Partly Sent Message with Attachment(s)		
	Partly Sent Message without Attachments		
	Partly Sent Message with Attachment(s)/ Read Delivery Report		
	Partly Sent Message without Attachments/Read Delivery Report		
	Partly Sent Message with Attachment(s)/ Unread Delivery Report		

₩	Partly Sent Message without Attachments/Unread Delivery Report
	Partly Sent Message with Attachment(s)/ Confirming Delivery
	Partly Sent Message without Attachments/Confirming Delivery
ř	Unsent Message with Attachment(s)/ Delivery Failed
¥	Unsent Message without Attachments/ Delivery Failed
	Unsent Message with Attachment(s)/ Waiting Delivery
P	Unsent Message without Attachments/ Waiting Delivery
	Unsent Message with Attachment(s)/ Sending
out.	Unsent Message without Attachments/ Sending
اکن	Draft with Attachment(s)
	Draft without Attachments

②S! Mail/SMS

\vee	S! Mail
STE	SMS
9	SMS on the USIM Card

③Priority/Protection

60	High/Protected
0	High/Not Protected
	Normal/Protected
60	Low/Protected
•	Low/Not Protected

Sorting Messages

Received and sent messages can be sorted into folders under *Received* and *Sent* of the Message Box according to the conditions you set.

From Message Box List Window, select a folder from Folder 1 to Folder 18 and Ku-man folder



- 2 Select the sorting criteria → → Specify the conditions →
 - Select **Person** to set an individual entry in Phone Book as the sorting condition.
 - Select *Group* to set a Group entry in Phone Book as the sorting condition.
 - Select Address to set the specified addresses as the sorting condition.
 - Select *Phone Book* to set those addresses that are either saved or not saved to Phone Book as the sorting condition.
 - Select *Ku-man* to set messages from Ku-man as the sorting condition.

More Features



Organizing Messages Using Messages (page 4-17)

(**>** page 4-18)



Message Box Settings (▶ page 12-14)

- Do Not Auto-delete Old Messages
- Switch Between Folder View and All Message View
- Switch Between Mixed View and Separate View

Message List Display Settings

(page 12-14)

• Switch the Message List Display Mode

Message List Window Settings

(page 12-15)

- Display Messages According to the Specified Criteria
- Create a New Phone Book Entry with a Phone Number/E-mail Address
- Add a Phone Number/E-mail Address to a Phone Book Entry
- Switch Between Unread and Read
- Switch All Messages in a Folder Between Unread and Read

Advanced Features

Sending Messages

Creating Messages

From Create Message Window page 4-4 Set Address Window page 4-4

Specify Recipients Quickly

[Simple Input]

 You can select addresses that you have saved to Simple Input list (page 12-11) and enter them.

Set Address Window Simple Input ⇒ • Select an entry → (•)

Select an Address from Sent Log/Received Log to Send a Message

[Sent Log/Received Log]

Set Address Window **Sent Log** or **Received Log** ⇒ Select an entryO

● Alternatively, press and hold ● / ● in Standby to display Sent Log/Received Log, select an entry and press of to create a message.

Send a Message to a Group

[Group]

• You can select addresses that you have saved to a Group (page 12-11) and enter them.

Set Address Window Group → Select a group **⇒**(•)

Insert Saved Information

[Insert]

Create Message Window Text → • > > Insert \Rightarrow \bullet) \Rightarrow Phone Book, My Details, Phrases, Emoticon, Signature, Notepad, **Message Box** or **URL History** \Rightarrow (\bullet) \Rightarrow Do the respective operations

Add Recipients

[Add Address]

Create Message Window Select the address field \searrow \rightarrow $Add\ Address <math>\Rightarrow$ \bigcirc \Rightarrow Select an address \Rightarrow (**●**)**⇒**

• For details on how to enter addresses, see page 4-4.

Delete Recipients

[Delete/Delete All/Select Multi]

■ Deleting One Entry

Create Message Window | Select the address field | Select an address → \(\sigma\) → Delete → (\blue) → One > (•)

■Deleting All Entries

Create Message Window Select the address field $\neg P$ \Rightarrow Delete All $\Rightarrow \bullet$

■Deleting Multiple Entries

Create Message Window Select the address field ⇒Select addresses ⇒ • ⇒ 🗊

Save a Recipient's Address to Phone Book [To Phone Book]

Create Message Window Select the address field

- Select an address → Save Sender → $\bullet \Rightarrow Add \ New \ or \ Add \Rightarrow \bullet$
- See "Creating Phone Book Entries" (page
 - 2-18) for about the following operations.

Switch To/Cc/Bcc for an Address

[To/Cc/Bcc]

Create Message Window | Select the address field |

- Select an address → \(\sigma\) → To/Cc/Bcc →
- \bullet \Rightarrow To, Cc or Bcc \Rightarrow \bullet

To: The recipient's address.

- Cc: Select this option to send copies of the message sent to the address in the To field to other addresses. Addresses entered in the Cc (carbon copy) field are also displayed to the other recipients.
- Bcc: Addresses entered in the **Bcc** (blind carbon copy) field are not displayed to the other recipients.

Save All Addresses to a Group

[To Group]

Create Message Window Select the address field⇒ \nearrow To **Group** \Rightarrow (itwice) \Rightarrow Select a group ⇒(•) ⇒Enter a group name ⇒(•)

Edit Text

[Edit Text]

Create Message Window | Select the text → (•) → Edit the text → (•)

Delete Text

[Clear Text]

Create Message Window | Select the text⇒ \> Clear Field ⇒ (•)

Change Mail Type

[Mail Type]

■Switching to SMS

Create Message Window $Type \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow SMS \Rightarrow \bullet$

 If a message contains something that cannot be sent by SMS, a confirmation window appears. The contents which cannot be sent will be deleted if you select *Change*.

- If the text exceeds the maximum number of characters allowed in SMS, a confirmation window appears. If you select Cut to Fit SMS after selecting Change, the maximum amount of text from the beginning is remained and the excess is deleted.
- If you change the mail type to SMS, the following items are deleted. E-mail address, Cc and Bcc setting, Subject, Attached file, Mail template and Arrange settings, Feeling Mail setting

■Switching to S! Mail

Create Message Window $Type \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow S! Mail \Rightarrow$ (\bullet)

- By performing the following operations, you can also change the mail type from SMS to S! Mail automatically. If these items are deleted, the mail type will be reset to SMS automatically. Add an e-mail address, Set Cc/Bcc setting, Enter Subject, Attach a file, Set Feeling Mail setting
- If you press \square and select **Templates** or Arrange while entering text, or if the text exceeds the maximum number of characters allowed in SMS, a confirmation window explaining the message cannot be sent as SMS appears. Select Change to S!Mail. Cut to Fit SMS, or Edit Message.

Attaching Files

From Create Message Window page 4-4 Attachments Window page 4-4

Shoot Picture or Video Attachment [Take Picture/Record Video]

■Picture

Attachments Window **Take Picture** → • → Take a picture **→** (•)

■Video

Attachments Window Record Video > • > Record a video → (•)

Arrange Mail Functions

From Create Message Window page 4-4

Arrange Window page 4-5

Other Decorations

[Arrange]

■Changing a Font Color

Arrange Window **Font Color** → • Select a color → • Enter text

■Blinking/Scrolling/Swinging a Text

■Aligning a Text

Arrange Window *LineUp* → Select a character position → Enter text

■Inserting a Line in Text

Arrange Window **Partition** ⇒ •

■Inserting Sounds

Arrange Window Sound → ● Phone Memory or Memory Card → ● ⇒ Select a folder → ● ⇒ Select a sound → ●

■Inserting My Pictograms

Arrange Window *MyPictograms* → Select a pictogram → (•)

■Deleting Decorations Individually from Text

Arrange Window Cancel • • Delete by Each • • Select the decoration to delete • •

■Deleting All Decorations

Arrange Window $Cancel \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Delete \ All \rightarrow \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc$

Change the Decorations [Change/Delete Arrange Settings]

Create Message Window Select text → ● ⇒Enter text → ■ → Select the end →

Insert a Mail Template

[Switch Templates]

Create Message Window Select text → \(\nabla \) → Switch

Templ. → \(\nabla \) → Switch → \(\nabla \) → Phone

Memory or Memory Card → \(\nabla \) → Select a template → \(\nabla \) → Edit text → \(\nabla \)

Save Templates

[Save Template]

Create Message Window Select text → ¬¬ Save

Template → ○ → Edit a title → ○ → Phone

Memory or Memory Card → ○

• Templates can only be saved when the text has been decorated with Arrange settings.

Outgoing Message Functions

Save without Sending

[Save to Draft]

Create Message Window Save to Draft → ●

Check the Content Before Sending a Message

[Preview]

Create Message Window

or

→ Preview →

•

Specify the Length of Time a Sent Message is Stored on Server Mail Box [Expiry Time]

Create Message Window *Options* → • Expiry *Time* → • Select an expiry time → •

Check Delivery of a Message [Delivery Check]

Create Message Window Options > Options > Options > Options > ON > Options > ON > Options > ON > Options > ON > Options > ON > Options > ON > Options > ON > Options > ON > Options > ON > Options > ON > Options > Options > ON > Options > Options > ON > Options > Options > ON > Options > Options > ON > Options > Opti

Specify a Time Before Delivering a Message to Recipients

[Delivery Time]

Create Message Window Options Delivery

 $\mathit{Time} \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow \mathsf{Select} \; \mathsf{a} \; \mathsf{delivery} \; \mathsf{time} \Rightarrow \bigcirc$

• This function can only be set with S! Mail.

Set Message Priority Before Sending [Priority]

Create Message Window *Options* ⇒ (•) ⇒ *Priority* ⇒ (•) ⇒ Select the priority ⇒ (•)

- This function can only be set with S! Mail.

Activate the Reply to Function Before Sending

[Reply to]

Create Message Window *Options* → (•) → *Reply to* \Rightarrow (\bullet) \Rightarrow Activate \Rightarrow (\bullet)

- Save a Reply address in advance (page 12-12).
- This function can only be set with S! Mail.

Delete a Sent Message Checked on the **Recipient's Side Automatically**

[Self-delete]

Create Message Window **Options** ⇒ $Self-delete \Rightarrow \bullet ON \Rightarrow \bullet$

• This function can only be set with S! Mail.

Incoming Messages

Receiving Messages

Retrieve the Continuation of S! Mail Manually

[Retrieve Mail]

Select S! Mail notification → (•) → Retrieve *Mail*⇒(•)

Forward the Continuation of S! Mail [Forward Mail]

Select S! Mail notification → \(\sqrt = \right) \(\right) \) Divert → \bullet \Rightarrow Server Mail \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow Keep or Do not **Keep** ⇒ • Enter an address ⇒ ✓

• For details on how to enter addresses, see page 4-4.

Server Mail Box Operations

Use the Mail List

[Update Mail List/Retrieve Mail]

Server Mail ⇒ •

Retrieving and Updating the Mail List $\Box \rightarrow Update \Rightarrow \bullet$

■Retrieving Messages

Select a message $\Rightarrow \mathbb{R} \rightarrow Retrieve \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow One$, Select Multi or $All \Rightarrow \bullet$

Retrieving Multiple Messages at Once \nearrow Retrieve \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow Select Multi \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow Select messages → (•) → ((7)

Forward Server Messages [Forward Server Mail]

Server Mail → ● Select a message ● Enter an address ● ⑤

- When **Do not Keep** is selected, the forwarded message is deleted from the Server Mail Box.
- For details on how to enter addresses, see page 4-4.

Delete Server Messages [Delete/Select Multi/Delete All]

Server Mail ⇒ ●

■Deleting One Message

Select a message \Rightarrow \triangleright \Rightarrow $Delete \Rightarrow$ \bigcirc \Rightarrow $One \Rightarrow$ \bigcirc \Rightarrow Server Mail or $Notif./Server \Rightarrow$ \bigcirc \Rightarrow $YES \Rightarrow$ \bigcirc

■Deleting Multiple Messages

► Delete → Select Multi → → Server Mail or Notif./Server → → Select messages → → ▼YES → ●

■Deleting All Messages

Delete → O → All Read Mail or All → O → Server Mail or Notif:/Server → O → Enter your Handset Code → YES → O

Check the Server Mail Box Status [Mailbox Volume]

Server Mail ⇒ ● → ¬ Mailbox Vol. → ●

- To update the amount of Server Mail Box space, press (Update).
- If the Server Mail Box usage exceeds 80%, a warning window appears. Retrieve messages stored on the Server Mail Box (page 4-16) or delete them.

Organizing/Using Messages

From Message Box List Window page 4-10

Message List Window page 4-10

Organizing Messages

Set Security for Message Box [Security Lock]

Message Box → Security Lock →

Enter your Handset Code → Lock → ●

• To check the content of messages, do the following.

Message Box → ● Enter your Handset Code → Select a folder → ● → Select a message → ●

Set Security for Folders

[Security Lock]

 You can set the handset so that it asks for entering your Handset Code in order to view the messages in the selected folder. However, folder security cannot be set to *General* folder

Message Box List Window Select a folder → 🔀 → Security Lock → 🍥 → Enter your Handset Code → Lock → 🌘

Edit a Folder Name

[Rename Folder]

Protect Messages [Protect/Select Multi/Protect All]

■Protecting One Message

Message List Window Select a message → \(\bar{\pi} \) → \(\bar{\pi} \) \(\

■Protecting Multiple Messages

Message List Window Protect → Select

Multi → Protect → Select messages

→ Select messages

■Protecting All Messages

Message List Window \nearrow **Protect** \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow **All** \rightarrow \bigcirc **Protect** \rightarrow \bigcirc (twice)

Delete Messages [Delete/Select Multi/All in Folder/Delete All]

■Deleting One Message

Message List Window Select a message → ▼ → Delete → ● → One → ● → YES → ●

■Deleting Multiple Messages

Message List Window ¬ Delete → → Select

Multi → → Select messages → → → →

YES → ◆

■Deleting All Messages in a Folder

Message Box List Window $\bigcirc \rightarrow Delete \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow All$ in Folder $\rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$ Enter your Handset Code $\rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc$

■ Deleting All Received/Sent Messages

Message Box List Window → **Delete** → • All → • Enter your Handset Code → **YES** → •

Using Messages

Forward Messages

[Forward Mail]

 When forwarding an S! Mail, the subject to which Fw: is prefixed is automatically inserted in the subject field.

Message List Window Select a message → 🔛 → **Divert** → •

Make a Call to the Sender/Recipient of the Message

[Call Sender/Call Address]

Message List Window Select a message → \(\bar{\pi} \rightarrow Call \)

Sender or Call Address → \(\bar{\pi} \rightarrow \)

Check Delivery Report [Check Delivery Report]

Use Linked Information

[Call/Create Message/Save Sender/ Access URL]

Message List Window Open a message that has a link⇒Select a link→●

• The available linked information is displayed in blue characters.

■Making a Call to the Selected Phone Number

Voice Call $\Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow \nearrow$

■ Making a Video Call to the Selected Phone Number

Voice Call $\Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow \bigvee \Rightarrow Video Call \Rightarrow$ (twice)

■Making an S! Circle Talk Call to the Selected Phone Number

Voice Call → • → \(\sigma\) → Circle Talk → • →

■ Sending a Message to the Selected Phone Number/E-mail Address

Create Mail → • → **Create** → • The Create Message Window opens

■Adding the Selected Phone Number/ E-mail Address to Phone Book

Save Sender → • → Add New or Add → • • The Phone Book Entry Window opens

- See "Creating Phone Book Entries" (page 2-18) for about the following operations.
- ■Saving the Selected Location Information to the My Locations

To Locations ⇒ •

■Connecting to the Selected URL *Connect* or *Do not Connect* (•)

Save Attached Files

[Save Attachments]

Message List Window Open a message that has an attachment ⇒ Select a file ⇒ • Save ⇒ • ⇒ Enter a file name ⇒ • Phone Memory or Memory Card ⇒ • Select a folder ⇒ •

- Some files cannot be saved depending on the file type.
- To display/play the attached file, open the file and select View or Play. Some data may not be displayed/played properly on your handset.
- When a received message has more than 20 attached files, all the files after the 20th file are not displayed/played.

Edit and Send Unsent Messages [Edit Unsent Messages]

• Press (OK) after editing the address.

Change the Order of Messages

[Sort by]

Message List Window → Sort by → Select the criteria for changing order → •

Copy Text

[Text Copy]

Message List Window Open a message → → Text

Copy → ● → Move the cursor to one end of the text string to copy → ● Specify the range to copy → ●

Move SMS Messages to the USIM Card or Handset [Move]

Message List Window Open a message

Move → To Folder, To Phone or To USIM → •

Check Message Details

[View Details]

Message List Window Open a message → View → View Details → •

Move Messages to Another Folder [Move Folder]

■Moving One Message

Message List Window Select a message → ♥ →

Move Folder → • One → • Select the destination folder → •

■Moving Multiple Messages

Message List Window ♥ → Move Folder → ● →

Select Multi → ● → Select messages → ● →

Select the destination folder → ●

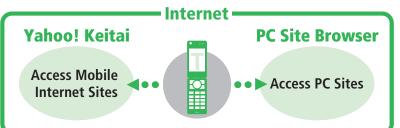
■Moving All Messages in the Folder

Message List Window \nearrow Move Folder \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow All \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Select the destination folder \rightarrow \bigcirc

Internet · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	-2
About the Internet · · · · · 5	-2
Yahoo! Keitai ·······5	-3
Accessing Yahoo! Keitai 5	
PC Site Browser · · · · · · 5	-4
Accessing PC Sites · · · · · 5	-4
Web Page Operations · · · · · · · 5	-5
Bookmarks/Saved Pages · · · · · · 5	-6
Using Bookmarks······5	-6
Using Saved Pages······5	-6
Advanced Features · · · · · · 5	-8

About the Internet

Use your handset to access the Mobile Internet via Yahoo! Keitai (SoftBank's mobile portal site). Also browse the Internet using PC Site Browser.



About Security

This handset uses SSL/TLS (a protocol for sending encrypted data) to protect against dangers on the Internet such as eavesdropping, tampering and spoofing. Root certificates necessary for SSL/TLS are saved on the handset.

- When a security notice appears, subscribers must decide for themselves whether or not to open the page. Opening secure pages constitutes agreement to the terms of SSL/TLS usage.
- SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp., VeriSign Japan K.K., Cybertrust Japan Co., Ltd., Entrust Japan Co., Ltd., GlobalSign K.K., RSA Security Japan Ltd. and Secom Trust Systems Co., Ltd. cannot be held liable for any damages associated with the use of SSL/TLS.

More Features



Security Settings

page 12-16)

- Send/Block Manufacture Number
- · Configure Send Referer Setting
- Fnable/Disable Cookies
- Configure Script Settings
- Check Root Certificates
- Set Authentication
- Set SSL Communication

Yahoo! Keitai

Accessing Yahoo! Keitai

1 Press √∞

• To disconnect during communication, press √ (Cancel).



Web Page

- 2 Select an item ⇒ •
- 3 To stop viewing the web page, press



Accessing a Web Page from History

Press and hold \\ \ History \ ●



History Window

2 Select a title ⇒ ●

Accessing a Web Page by Entering the Address

Press and hold $\nabla P \Rightarrow Enter URL \Rightarrow \bullet$



URL Window

2 Select *Direct Input* → ● ⇒Enter a URL ⇒ (twice)

More Features



Connecting/Browsing



(page 5-8)



Universal Settings for Yahoo! Keitai and PC Site Browser (page 12-17)

- Delete Cache Memory
- Delete All Cookies
- Clear Authentication Info
- · Return Browser Settings, Bookmarks, and Saved Pages to Default
- Restore Settings and Stored Information to Default

Yahoo! Keitai Settings (page 12-17)

 Set the Storage Location for Downloaded Contents

Accessing PC Sites

Press and hold ¬→ (□)



PC Browser Menu

- 2 Select *Homepage* → Always Ask or Ask Once Only →
 - A confirmation window about page display and connection fees appears. If you select *Ask Once Only*, this window will not be displayed from the next time.



Web Page

Accessing a Web Page from History

From PC Browser Menu, select *History*



History Window

2 Select a title → ● → Always Ask or Ask
Once Only → ●

Accessing a Web Page by Entering the URL

From PC Browser Menu, select *Enter*URL

•



URL Window

- 2 Select *Direct Input* → ⇒Enter a URL → ● (twice) ⇒ *Always Ask* or *Ask Once Only* → ●
- Some websites may not be displayed correctly or it may take time to open the site depending on the site.

More Features



Connecting/Browsing PC Site Browser





Universal Settings for Yahoo! Keitai and PC Site Browser (▶ page 12-17)

- Delete Cache Memory
- Delete All Cookies
- Clear Authentication Info
- Return Browser Settings, Bookmarks, and Saved Pages to Default
- Restore Settings and Stored Information to Default

PC Site Browser Settings (page 12-17)

 Do Not Display a Warning Window When Switching Browsers

Web Page Operations

Scrolling Pages

When the whole page is not displayed on the browser screen, the scroll bar appears on the right or bottom of the screen. View the remaining part using ()/• to scroll the screen.

Moving Cursor

To select items, use 🐧 🕞 to move cursor.

Returning to Previous Page/Next Page

Websites you have retrieved are temporarily stored. Press (Back) to return to the previous page. If you press mand select *Forward*, it takes you to the next page.

Text Entry & Item Selection

When there are entry fields and selectable items on the screen, operate as follows.



①Text Entry Field You can enter text

directly. Select [and press • . The text entry window opens. Enter text and press .

②Menu List

Select and press to display the menu list. Select an item and press (•).

3 Command Button Select operations such as sending or canceling

what you put in the entry fields. Select and press • to execute the indicated command.

(4)Checkbox

Select
☐ and press
●. The checkbox changes to . indicating that the item is selected.

(5) Radio Button

Select one of a range of items. Select () and press (•). The radio button changes to (•), indicating that the item is selected.

• One on the left is a screen image. The actual screen may look different.

More Features



Using Web Pages



page 12-18)

Web Page Settings

- Change the Font Size
- Change the Scroll Unit Change the Text Encoding Type
- Adjust Sound Playback Volume
- Do Not Download Images and Melodies from Web Pages
- Set Security Lock

If you bookmark frequently accessed pages, you will be able to access them quickly and easily.

Saving a Bookmark

- **1** Display a page⇒ \(\sigma\) \(\sigma\) Bookmarks \(\sigma\)
- 2 Select Save →
 - If you don't edit the title or URL, press
 (OK).
- 3 Press (Edit) ⇒Edit the title⇒●



- 4 Press (OK) →
 - Select a folder when adding the bookmark to one of the folders you created.

Opening Bookmarks

- Press and hold \(\sum Bookmarks ⇒ \ellow\)
 - To access a web page from a PC site bookmark:

Press and hold $\begin{tabular}{c} \begin{tabular}{c} \begin{tabular} \begin{tabular}{c} \begin{tabular}{c} \begin{tabular}{c}$



Bookmarks List Window

2 Select the title of a page → •

Using Saved Pages

If you save frequently accessed information (pages) to Saved Pages, the information can be viewed without accessing the Internet later.

Saving Displayed Pages to Saved Pages

- Display a page ⇒ Saved Pages

 → •
- 2 Select Save → ⇒Enter a title → ●
- Some pages may not be saved because of copyright restrictions, etc.
- If you save a page with the same URL as a page already saved in Saved Pages, it is saved as a different page.

Viewing Saved Pages

Press and hold ¬¬Saved Pages→•



Saved Pages List Window

2 Select the title of a saved page ⇒●

More Features



Bookmarks and Saved Pages



Internet

From History Window page 5-3, 5-4 URL Window page 5-3, 5-4 Web Page page 5-3, 5-4

Connecting/Browsing

Delete URL History

[Delete/Delete All]

■ Deleting One Entry

History Window \searrow \rightarrow $Delete \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow One \Rightarrow$ \bullet \Rightarrow YES \Rightarrow \bullet

■Deleting All Entries

History Window \searrow \rightarrow $Delete \Rightarrow (\bullet) \Rightarrow All \Rightarrow (\bullet) \Rightarrow$ Enter your Handset Code → YES → •

Use URL History

[URL History]

URL Window *URL History* → Select a URL → (twice)

Switch Between Yahoo! Keitai and PC Site **Browser** [Switch Browsers]

Web Page \searrow Change View \Rightarrow Always

Ask or Ask Once Only → (•)

• If you select **Ask Once Only**, the confirmation window will not be displayed from the next time.

PC Site Browser

From Web Page page 5-4

Switch the Screen

[PC Screen/Small Screen]

Web Page ¬→PC Screen or Small Screen → (•)

Enlarge/Reduce a Page

[Zoom]

Web Page $\searrow Tool \Rightarrow \bullet Zoom \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow$ Select magnification/shrinkage percentage → ●

View Pages in Landscape or Portrait [Landscape/Portrait]

Web Page \searrow \rightarrow $Tool \Rightarrow \bigcirc$ \rightarrow Landscape orPortrait ⇒ (•)

Display a Selected Frame in the Whole Screen

[Frame In]

Web Page Select a frame $\Rightarrow \searrow Tool \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow$ Frame In

■Returning to the All-Frames Screen $\neg \neg Tool \Rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow Frame\ Out \Rightarrow \bullet$

Using Web Pages

Update Displayed Page

[Reload Page]

Web Page \searrow \Rightarrow Reload Page \Rightarrow \bullet

Copy Text Strings

[Text Copy]

Web Page \nearrow \rightarrow **Text Copy** \rightarrow \rightarrow Move the cursor to the first/last character of a text range ⇒ Specify a range of text to copy ⇒ • Only characters and pictographs can be copied.

Send a Page URL via Mail

[Send URL]

Web Page \searrow Tool \Rightarrow Send URL \Rightarrow \bullet

Search for a Particular Text String on a Page

[Search]

Web Page \searrow Tool \Rightarrow Search \Rightarrow \Rightarrow Enter a text string to search for → (•) → Select the search method $\Rightarrow \bullet \cup Down$, or ONor $OFF \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow \bigcirc$

Use Files in Web Pages [Save File/File Details/File Playback]

Display a page that has a file \Rightarrow \searrow \Rightarrow Saving $Mode \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow$ Select a file $\Rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$

■Saving the File to Data Folder

Save Phone Memory or Memory

Card → • Select a folder → •

- Some files may not be saved because of copyright restrictions, etc.
- ■Displaying the File Properties

 File Details

 ()
- ■Playing or Displaying the File

 Play/View → •
- Some files may not be displayed/played properly on your handset.

Use Files from Links in Web Pages [File Playback/Save File/File Details/ Set Wallpaper/Set Ringtone]

Display a page that has a file⇒Select a link⇒●

■Playing or Displaying the File

Play/View **→** •

- Some files may not be displayed/played properly on your handset.
- ■Saving the File

Save⇒●

- Some files may not be saved because of copyright restrictions, etc.
- ■Displaying the File Properties

File Details → (•)

- ■Saving and Setting the File as Wallpaper Settings → • (twice)
- Saving and Setting the File as Ringtone

Save & Set → • Ring Song • Tone or

Music → • Select a type of incoming event →

(twice)

Use Text Strings in Web Pages [Use Phone Number/E-mail Address/URL]

- Available only when the phone number, e-mail address or URL is underlined.
- ■Making a Call/Adding to Phone Book

Web Page Select a link \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow Call or To Phone Book \Rightarrow \bigcirc

■ Sending a Message/Adding to Phone Book

Web Page Select a link \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow As Mail or To

Phone Book → •

■Accessing a Website

Web Page Select a link ⇒●

Save a Page to Event

[To Event]

Web Page \nearrow **Tool** \rightarrow **To Event** \rightarrow \rightarrow Save the event (page 8-4)

Save a Page to My Locations

[To Locations]

Web Page ► Tool → To Locations →

◆Save the location information (page 8-19)

View Page Properties

[Page Details]

Web Page $\longrightarrow Tool \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Details \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$ Page Details $\rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$

View the Server Certificate for the Web Page

[Session Info.]

Web Page ¬¬Tool → → Details → → Session Info. → ●

Jump to the Top or End of the Web Page [Jump]

Web Page \nearrow $Tool \rightarrow \bigcirc$ To Top or To End

Bookmarks and Saved Pages

From Bookmarks List Window page 5-6
Saved Pages List Window page 5-7

Delete Bookmarks and Saved Pages [Delete/Delete All]

■Deleting One Entry

■Deleting All Entries

Bookmarks List Window / Saved Pages List Window

Delete

All

Enter your

Handset Code

YES

■

Change Titles

[Edit Title]

■Changing a Bookmark Title

Bookmarks List Window Select a bookmark → 👽 → Edit → ⑥ → Select the title field → ⑥ → Edit the title → ⑥ → 🖅

■Changing the Title of a Saved Page

Saved Pages List Window Select a saved page → 😿 → Rename → 🌖 → Edit the title → 🌖

Create a Folder to Organize Bookmarks [Create Folder]

Bookmarks List Window

→ Create Folder →

→ Enter a folder name → •

Move Bookmarks to a Specified Folder [Move]

Bookmarks List Window Select a bookmark → ▼ → Move → ● → Select a folder → ●

Send a Bookmark via Mail

[As Mail]

Bookmarks List Window Select a bookmark → \(\rightarrow \) → **As Mail** → (•)

Camera · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
About the Camera · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	6-2
aking Pictures·····	6-3
Camera Modes · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
Taking a Picture · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
Recording Videos·····	6-5
Video Modes · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
Recording a Video · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
Camera Functions · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
Delay Timer · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
Frame Setting (Still Picture) · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
Multi Shots (Still Picture) · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
Picture Editing · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
Basic Operations for Picture Editing · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
Changing the Size · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
Picture Effects · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
Compounding Pictures · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
Advanced Features · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	6-10

About the Camera

Use the camera to take pictures and record videos.

You can use the Main Camera to take pictures of other people, animals or scenery, or the Sub Camera to take self-portraits.

Image Sizes

Select from a variety of sizes, from handy-size pictures or videos perfect for Sha-mail or Movie Sha-mail to high resolution images, to fit your needs.

perfect for frames or o

Use the delay-timer, take pictures with frames or other effects, or take continuous shots.

Auto Focus

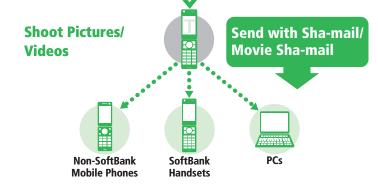
When you press the shutter key, the camera automatically detects the distance to the subject and focuses.

Picture Editing

Shooting Modes

Compose and edit images by adding stamps or text to pictures you have taken.

- Pictures are saved in JPEG format, and videos in MPEG-4 format.
- To avoid camera shake, hold the handset firmly.
- Fingerprints or grime may affect focus. Wipe the lens with a soft cloth.
- Do not block the lens with your finger or strap when shooting pictures/videos.



Taking Pictures

Camera Modes

There are two modes for taking pictures: *Mobile* and *Digital*.

■Mobile

Take a picture to set as wallpaper, etc.

■Digital

Take a high-quality picture to display on an external device such as PC.

Taking a Picture

- Press → Camera → → Mobile or Digital →
 - Press in Standby to display the viewfinder from the last Camera mode you used.



Viewfinder

2 Frame the subject in the Display⇒

/a

Autofocus adjustment occurs prior to taking a picture (focus frame appears). The shutter clicks, and the preview window appears.



Preview Window

- To delete the picture you have taken:
 Press ¬YES→ ○
- 3 Press •/

If Storage is set to *Phone Memory*, the picture is saved to *Pictures* in Data Folder, and the viewfinder reappears. If it is set to *Memory Card*, a picture taken in *Mobile* mode is saved to *Pictures*, one taken in *Digital* mode to *Digital Camera*, and the viewfinder reappears.

 Capturing images in low-lighting may compromise image quality. Capture images in adequate lighting or use Mobile Light.

Keys for Use with Viewfinder

Toggle Camera Modes	2 tr ABC
Zoom Adjustment	O 1 O
Exposure Adjustment	⊙ /⊙
Mobile Light On/Off	X ***
Self-view On/Off	# E ⁴⁶
Icons Display On/Off	0 to
Key Guide On/Off	1 8

More Features



Functions for Taking Pictures

(page 6-10)

Common Functions After Shooting

Pictures/Videos (▶ page 6-10)



Settings for Shooting Pictures/Videos



- · Change Storage Location
- Set Image Quality
- Set White Balance
- · Adjust Color Control
- Set Picture/Video Effects
- Adjust Flicker
- Set Shortcuts While Shooting Pictures/Videos
- Set the File Name

Settings for Taking Pictures

page 12-23)

- Save Pictures Automatically
- Change the Shutter Sound
- Add Date Stamp
- Set Picture Guidelines
- Take a Picture for Phone Book Entry

Recording Videos

Video Modes

There are three modes for recording videos: *Video*, *Video Mail* and *Short Video*.

■Video

Record a video for a long time.

■Video Mail

Record a video to attach to a message.

■Short Video

Record a video to attach to a message and send to an MPEG-4-compatible SoftBank mobile phone (PDC).

Recording a Video

Recorded videos are automatically saved to the *Videos* folder in the *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card*.

- Press → Camera → → Video, Video

 Mail or Short Video →
 - Press and hold a in Standby to display the video viewfinder from the last Video mode you used.



Video Viewfinder

The start sound is heard and recording begins.



 In Video mode, press (Pause) to pause, then (Record) to resume recording.

Recording videos

3 Press •/•

End tone sounds, and the first frame of the recording appears.

The file is saved in the location specified in *Storage*.



Preview Window

To delete the recording:
 Press ¬Delete → →YES →



The video you have recorded is played.

Keys for Use with Video Viewfinder

Toggle Video Modes	3 t
Zoom Adjustment	③ / ②
Exposure Adjustment	€)/⊙•
Mobile Light On/Off	★ #0
Self-view On/Off	## EE49 A/a
Icons Display On/Off	d 0
Key Guide On/Off	1 5

More Features



Functions for Recording Videos

(page 6-10)

Common Functions After Shooting
Pictures/Videos (▶ page 6-10)



Settings for Shooting Pictures/Videos

(page 12-22)

- Change Storage Location
- Set Image Quality
 Set White Balance
- Set White Balance
- Adjust Color Control
- Set Picture/Video Effects
- Adjust Flicker
- Set Shortcuts While Shooting Pictures/Videos
- · Set the File Name

Settings for Recording Videos

page 12-24)

- Do Not Record Sound
- Enlarge the Video Viewfinder
- Change the Start/End Sound
- Set the Preview Display
- Set the Recorded Video as a Ringtone Pattern

Camera Functions

Delay Timer

This feature allows you to take a picture or start recording after •/• is pressed and a specified time elapses.

- Activate the Viewfinder/Video
 Viewfinder⇒ \(\sigma \) → Picture or Movie

 → (•)
- 2 Select *Delay Timer*→●



- 3 Select seconds → •
- Zoom is unavailable when the delay timer is activated.

Frame Setting (Still Picture)

- Activate the Viewfinder $\Rightarrow \nabla \Rightarrow Add$ Frame $\Rightarrow \bullet$
- 2 Select Phone Memory or Memory Card

 → ●
- To cancel the frame, select *OFF*.
- 3 Select Pictures → •
- 4 Select a frame⇒● (twice)
- When the Camera mode is set to *Digital*, you cannot use Add Frame.

Multi Shots (Still Picture)

Take nine pictures in succession.

Activate the Viewfinder → ¬→ Multi Shots → •



- 2 Select a speed⇒•
- When the Camera mode is set to *Digital*, you cannot use Multi Shots.
- Night mode is not available when using Multi Shots.

Picture Editing

Images that have been captured and stored in Data Folder or memory card can be edited. The following types of files can be edited: JPEG files of 1.6 Mbytes or less, PNG files of 364 Kbytes or less.

Images that are larger than W240×H320 (W320 ×H240) are reduced to W240×H320. A picture that is smaller than W16×H16 cannot be edited.

- If Overwrite is performed, the file cannot be restored to the original. To leave the original file, select Save as New.
- If Data Folder is full, delete unnecessary files from Data Folder before editing a picture.

Basic Operations for Picture Editing

Press ● → Tools → ● Useful Tools →

● → Edit Picture → ●



2 Select *Edit* → ● → *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card* → ● → *Pictures* or *Digital Camera* → ○ → Select a picture → ●



Picture Editing Window

3 Press √∑r



4 Select the edit type → ● Perform edit operations



5 Press (OK) ⇒Overwrite or Save as

New → •

Changing the Size

1 In the Picture Editing Window, press



- 2 Select a picture size ⇒
 - After selecting the size, you can use 🚱 to adjust the position of the picture to clip.
 - To adjust the width or height: Press (Resize) → Fit to Width or Fit to Length → (•)
 - To rotate the picture:
 Press (Resize) → Rotate Image → ●
- 3 Press ႃ☞ (Cut)→ Editing is complete.

Picture Effects

In the Picture Editing Window, press

¬¬ ⇒Effects→•



- 2 Select an effect ⇒
 - Press () () to change the effect level in Twinkle, Whitening, Change Color, Shade Off, Pinch, and Brush Up.
- Press Editing is complete.

Compounding Pictures

Compound two pictures.

- In the Picture Editing Window, press

 ¬¬→Overlav→•
- Select Phone Memory or Memory Card

 → → Pictures → → Select a picture

 → •
- Press <a>O/
 to adjust the translucency rate.
- Press Editing is complete.

More Features



Additional Picture Editing Functions



6

- A

Advanced Features

Camera

From Viewfinder page 6-3 Preview Window page 6-3, 6-6 Video Viewfinder page 6-5

Functions for Taking Pictures

Shoot with the Focus Locked [Auto Focus Lock]

Viewfinder Frame the subject in the Display→

Compose the image→

/□

/□

/□

- The focus frame turns from white to green when focus was successful and it turns red when focus has failed.
- After focusing on the subject, press 🗟 again to re-focus the subject.

Change the Size of Pictures to Take [Picture Size]

Viewfinder ► Picture Size → Select a picture size → ●

• For details on picture sizes, see page 13-20.

Take Pictures with Beautiful Skin Tones [Brush Up Mode]

[Night]

Take Clear Pictures of Night View

 $\begin{array}{c} \hline \text{Viewfinder} & \searrow \rightarrow Picture \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow Night \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow \\ ON \rightarrow \bullet & \bullet \\ \hline \end{array}$

Functions for Recording Videos

Change the Format of Videos

[Encode]

Video Viewfinder \longrightarrow $Movie \longrightarrow \bigcirc \longrightarrow Encode \longrightarrow$ \longrightarrow MPEG4 or $H.263 \longrightarrow \bigcirc$

• The format of videos can only be changed while in *Video Mail* mode.

Common Functions After Shooting Pictures/Videos

View a Picture/Video in Data Folder [View Picture/Video]

Viewfinder / Video Viewfinder

→ My Pictures or
My Videos → • Select a picture or video → •

- To use the full screen, press (Full) while viewing the picture.
- To display the key guide, press while playing a video.

Send a Picture/Video via Mail

[As Mail]

- If Auto Save (page 12-23) is set to OFF, a picture can be sent immediately after it is taken.
- Videos recorded in Video mode cannot be sent



 For details on creating S! Mail messages, see page 4-4.

Send a Picture/Video to Another Handset [Via Infrared]

- If Auto Save (page 12-23) is set to OFF, a picture can be sent immediately after it is taken.
- Videos recorded in Video mode cannot be sent.

Preview Window 🔀 ⇒ Via Infrared ⇒ •

 For sending by infrared communication, see page 11-3.

Additional Picture Editing Functions

From Picture Editing Window page 6-8

Add Text to a Picture

[Add Text]

Picture Editing Window $\searrow \rightarrow Add\ Text \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$ Select a font size $\rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$ Enter text $\rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$ to adjust the position $\rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$ Overwrite or Save as New $\rightarrow \bigcirc$

■Changing the Font Color

■Changing the Frame Color

Add a Frame to a Picture

[Add Frame]

Picture Editing Window PAdd Frame → →

Phone Memory or Memory Card → →

Select a frame → → ⊕ to adjust the position

→ → ✓ Overwrite or Save as New →

•

Add a Stamp to a Picture

[Add Stamp]

Picture Editing Window \longrightarrow Add Stamp \longrightarrow \longrightarrow Phone Memory or Memory Card \longrightarrow \longrightarrow Select a stamp \longrightarrow \bigcirc \longrightarrow \bigcirc to adjust the position \longrightarrow \bigcirc \longrightarrow \bigcirc (twice) \longrightarrow Overwrite or Save as New

• If the size of a stamp is larger than that of the picture, the stamp cannot be added.

Rotate a Picture

[Rotate Image]

Mix Pictures to Create Wallpaper [Wallpaper]

● → Tools → ● → Useful Tools → ● → Edit

Picture → ● → Wallpaper → ● → Select [1] →
● → Phone Memory or Memory Card → ●
→ Select a picture → ● → ⑤ to compose the image → ● → Select [2] to [4] and repeat the operations → ◎ → Phone Memory or Memory Card → ●

● To unset a picture, press 🔀 (Delete).

Playing Music and Videos · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	7-2
About Music/Video Playback · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	7-2
Obtaining Music and Videos · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	7-3
Playing Music····	
Playing Videos · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	7-5
Playlists · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	7-7
Using Playlists · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	7-7
S! Appli	7-8
Using S! Appli · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	7-8
Downloading S! Appli · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	7-8
Starting S! Appli · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	7-8
Advanced Features · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	-10

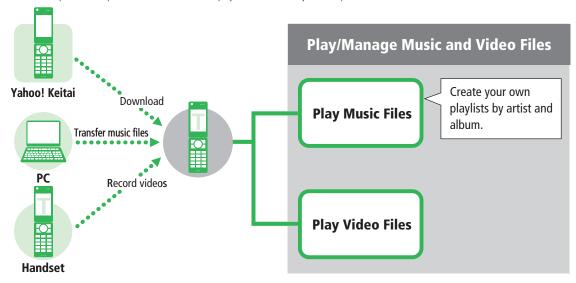
Media Player/S! Appli

Playing Music and Videos

About Music/Video Playback

Music and videos stored on the handset are played and managed with Media Player.

- Access Web pages to get music/video files.
- See page 13-20 for a list of file types that can be played with Media Player.
- Connect the Earphone-Microphone to listen to music files played with Media Player via earphones.



• Media Player cannot be used when battery power is low. Charge the battery to use Media Player.

Obtaining Music and Videos

Download music and video files from Yahoo! Keitai, etc.

- You can connect your handset to your PC with the USB cable and transfer music files to your handset. For details on transferring music files, see page 11-4.
- 🚺 Press *→Media Player* → ●



- 2 Select Audio or Videos → •
- 3 Select *Download Music* or *Download*Videos → → YES →
 - Follow the onscreen instructions.

Streaming

Access Web pages for streaming music/video files.

- Packet transmission fees apply even if playback is paused because the handset continues network communication.
- Press *Media Player* → ●
- 2 Select Streaming → Denter URL →

 Denter a URL → ●

Streaming from Bookmarked Pages

Access the bookmarked Web pages for streaming.

- 🚺 Press *→Media Player* → ●
- 2 Select Streaming → → Bookmarks

 → •
- **3** Select a Bookmark⇒⊙

Streaming from Recent URLs

- 🊹 Press 🍑 ⇒Media Player⇒ 🍑
- **2** Select *Streaming* \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow *Recent* \Rightarrow \bullet
- 3 Select a title → ●

Streaming from Links in Messages and Web Pages

Stream content by selecting a link.

- Select a link in S! Mail/SMS → →

 Connect or Do not Connect →
 - To stream data from the Internet: Select a link
 - Operations may vary depending on the website.

Playing Music





Audio Menu Window

2 Select *All Music* → (•)



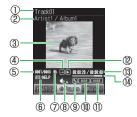
All Music List Window

- Select Disc Search to display all music files by artist and album.
- Select Artist, Album or Folder to display music files by artist, album or folder, respectively.

3 Select a music file⇒ ●

- If a music file includes a jacket photo, the jacket photo appears when the file is selected in the list window. Press during playback to switch the jacket photo.
- To end Media Player, press POWER.
- If you close the handset while playing music files with Media Player, Music Player will be displayed in the External Display (page 7-5).

Music File Playback Window



Music File Playback Window

①Title ②Artist Nam ③Playback Image ④Play Mode	e/Album Name
→ All	Repeat
Repeat All	Random Ra
Current Only	
⑤File Number/Total Number of Files	
6 Help Guidance	⑦Web Link
®Playback Volume	
	①Equalizer
Playback Status	
▶ Play	▶ Fast Forward
Pause	Rewind
Buffering	Stop
(13) Elapsed Playback Time/	Total Playback Time
(4) Progress Bar	•

Operations While Playing/Paused

Return to the Beginning of a File/ Skip to Previous File	★ *** / •••
Skip to Next File	## EN / ()
Fast Forward	Press and hold
Rewind	Press and hold
Adjust Volume	③
Key Guide	1 35

About Music Player

If you close the handset while playing music with Media Player, Music Player will be activated automatically to continue playback.



- ①Play Mode
- ②Playback Status
- ③Title

Activating Music Player

- Close the handset while playing music files with Media Player
 - If you open the handset while playing music with Music Player, it will be switched to background playback.

Playing Videos

Press ● *Media Player* ● *Videos* **⇒**(•)



Video Menu Window

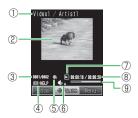
2 Select *Videos* ⇒ (•) ⇒ *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card* **→** (•)



3 Select a video file⇒ •



Video File Playback Window



Video File Playback Window

- (1)File Name/Artist Name
- ②Video
- ③File Number/Total Number of Files
- 4) Help Guidance
- ⑤Web Link
- ⑥Playback Volume ⑦Playback Status
 - **▶** Play
- Fast Forward Rewind
- Pause Buffering
- Slow Playback

- Stop
- ® Elapsed Playback Time/Total Playback Time
- Progress Bar

Operations While Playing/Paused

Skip to Previous File	• while playing/₩
Skip to Next File	• while playing/# EN
Fast Forward	Press and hold while playing
Rewind	Press and hold while playing
Frame Back	• while paused
Frame Advance	• while paused
Slow Playback	Press and hold while paused
Adjust Volume	③
Key Guide	1 5

More Features



Functions for Music/Video Playback

(page 7-10)

Playback Features (Music) (page 7-10) Playback Features (Video) (▶ page 7-10) **Functions for Music/Video Files**

(page 7-10)



Settings for Playing Music

page 12-25)

• Set the Wallpaper Displayed During Playback

Playlists

Using Playlists

Using playlists, you will be able to create a list of your favorite songs and play them as a set. Add music files to playlists by all tracks at once, by artist, or by album.

Adding Songs to a Playlist

- Press
 → Playlist → •
- Press ¬New Playlist→ → Phone

 Memory or Memory Card → •
- 3 Enter a playlist name → → YES → •



Playlist Creation Window

- 4 Select All Music ⇒
 - To select music files by artist or by album: Select Artist or Album → Select an artist or album → (•)

- 5 Select a music file⇒
 - To select multiple files, repeat this step.



6 Press @ (Create)

Playing a Playlist

Press
→ Playlist → •



Playlist Window

2 Select a playlist ⇒ (Play)

Changing the Name of a Playlist

- Press
 → Playlist → •
- 2 Select a playlist⇒ ¬Rename → •
- 3 Edit the playlist name ⇒●

More Features



Functions for Playlists (▶ page 7-11)

Using S! Appli

Download an S! Appli from Web pages providing S! Appli on the Internet. Downloading incurs the same amount of communication charges as when vou use the Internet.

- For details, contact SoftBank General Information (page 13-45).
- You can download and use only S! Appli that are specially designed for SoftBank handsets.

Downloading S! Appli

Press \bullet \Rightarrow S! Appli \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow Library **⇒**(•)



S! Appli Library

- 2 Select *More S! Appli* \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow *YES* \Rightarrow Select an S! Appli⇒Download **⇒**(•)
- **3** Select *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card* $\Rightarrow \bullet$

Downloading begins.

- A confirmation window appears when the download is completed.
- If the battery level is low, the application may not be completely downloaded.
- If you replace the USIM Card, downloaded applications will no longer be available.

Starting S! Appli

- Press $\bullet \Rightarrow S! Appli \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow Library$ **⇒**(•)
 - To change the Library view from the handset to the memory card, press (S)
- 2 Select an S! Appli⇒ ●
- When you use a Network S! Appli, a communication fee is charged each time the application connects to the network.
- When using a Network S! Appli while Access under Security is set to Blanket, the handset is automatically connected to the network without displaying the alert.

Suspending/Resuming/Ending S! Appli

- While an S! Appli is running, press 🔀
- **2** Select *Pause*, *Resume* or *End* → •

Resuming/Ending Suspended S! Appli

Press $\bullet \Rightarrow S! Appli \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow Library$

2 Select *Resume* or *Exit* → •

More Features



S! Appli

(page 7-12)



Settings for Operations While Running S! Appli (▶ page 12-26)

- Change Sound Effect Volume
- Set Backlight Illumination
- Set Backlight Blinking
- Set Vibration
- Set Priority While Running S! Appli

Other S! Appli Settings (page 12-26)

- Set Confirmation Window for Making Calls or Network Connection
- Update S! Appli Information on the Memory Card
- View S! Appli License Information
- Confirm S! Appli Root Certificates

7

Media Player

From All Music List Window page 7-4 Music File Playback Window page 7-4 Video Menu Window page 7-5 Video List Window page 7-5 Video File Playback Window page 7-7

Functions for Music/Video Playback

Specify a Point to Start Playback [Search Time]

Music File Playback Window / Video File Playback Window While a file is playing/paused → Search

Time → ● ►Enter the start position (time) →

Access Recently Played Files

[Recent]

Playlist Window / Video Menu Window Recent > •

Playback Features (Music)

Replay the Last Played Song [Play Last Song]

Press and hold 🖾

Play Songs in Random Order

[Random Play]

Music File Playback Window While a file is playing/
paused → Play Mode → Random →

Random →

Repeat

[Repeat Play]

Music File Playback Window While a file is playing/paused >> Play Mode > • Repeat or Repeat All > •

Change Sound Quality [Surround/Equalizer/Voice Cancel]

Music file Playback Window While a file is playing/
paused → \(\bar{V} \) → Surround, Equalizer or Voice

Cancel → \(\hat{V} \) → Select a sound effect, ON or

OFF → \(\hat{V} \)

Do Other Operations While Playing Music [Background Play]

Music File Playback Window While a file is playing/ paused→≦

Playback Features (Video)

Change the Size of Videos [Normal Screen/Full Screen]

Video File Playback Window While a file is playing/paused → Normal Screen or Full Screen → ●

Functions for Music/Video Files

Change the Order of Music/Video Files [Sort by]

■Changing the Order of Music Files

All Music List Window Select a file → Sort by

Select the sort criteria →

Select the sort criteria

■Changing the Order of Video Files

Video List Window Select a file → Change View → Sort by → Select the sort criteria → •

Send Music/Video Files to Another Handset [Send File]

● Data Folder • • Ring Song • Tone. Music or Videos → Select a music or video file \Rightarrow Send \Rightarrow Select the transmission method **→** (•)

• For sending by infrared communication, see page 11-3.

View Music/Video File Properties [Details]

All Music List Window / Video List Window Select a file $\Rightarrow \nabla P \Rightarrow Details \Rightarrow \bullet$

Functions for Playlists

From Music File Playback Window page 7-4 Playlist Window page 7-7

Add a Song Being Played to a Playlist [To Playlist]

Music File Playback Window While a file is playing/ paused → \\ \rightarrow To Playlist → (•) → Select a playlist **→** (•)

Add a Song Being Played to My Library [To My Library]

Music File Playback Window While a file is playing/

Add Songs to a Playlist

[Add Tracks]

Playlist Window Select a playlist ⇒ (•) → 🔝 ⇒ Add Tracks \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow All Music \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow Select a music file → (•) → (7

• To select music files by artist or album, select Artist or Album and select an artist or album, respectively.

Change the Playing Order of a Playlist [Change Order]

Playlist Window Select a playlist → • Select a file⇒ Select a location → (•)

Delete a Song from a Playlist [Remove Tracks]

Playlist Window Select a playlist → 🕶 → Remove Tracks \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow $One \Rightarrow \bullet$ \Rightarrow $YES \Rightarrow$

- To delete multiple music files, select Select Multi, select files you want to delete, and press 📆 .
- If you delete all files on a playlist, the playlist will be deleted, too.

Copy a Playlist

[Copy Playlist]

Playlist Window Select a playlist → \(\nabla \nab

Delete a Playlist

[Delete Playlist]

Playlist Window Select a playlist ⇒ \\ \nabla \) ⇒ **Delete** ⇒

7

S! Appli

From S! Appli Library page 7-8

Set an S! Appli as Screensaver [S! Appli Screensaver Settings]

● S! Appli → Settings → Screensaver → (•)

■Selecting an S! Appli

Screensavers → • Select an S! Appli → • → YES → • •

■Setting the S! Appli Start Time

 \searrow Start Time \Rightarrow \bigcirc Enter the time until start \Rightarrow \bigcirc

- Even if there is an incoming call, Answering Machine will not operate when an S! Appli is set as the Screensaver or when the *Voice Call* of Calls&Alarms (page 12-26) is set as *Continue Apps*.
- According to the type of application, there are some cases when a Screensaver application may pause if the time specified for Power Saving (page 12-4) is over.
- While a Screensaver application is running, Twinkle Light (page 12-5) flashes only during calls

Move S! Appli

[Move/Select Multi/Move All]

■Moving One Application

S! Appli Library Select an application → \(\begin{align*} \begin{align*} \begin{

■Moving Multiple Applications

■Moving All Applications

S! Appli Library \longrightarrow $Move \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow All \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$ Enter your Handset Code \rightarrow $YES \rightarrow \bigcirc$

- Screensaver settings will be canceled if the S! Appli set as Screensaver is moved to the memory card.
- There are some cases when an S! Appli cannot be moved anywhere according to the type of the preinstalled S! Appli. There are also some cases when an S! Appli cannot be moved to the memory card according to the type of S! Appli.
- If there is the same S! Appli on the handset or on the memory card, the S! Appli will be overwritten.

Delete S! Appli | IDelete/Select Multi/Delete All

■Deleting One Application

S! Appli Library Select an application → ► → **Delete** → **One** → **One** → **YES** → **One**

■Deleting Multiple Applications

■Deleting All Applications

S! Appli Library \longrightarrow **Delete** \longrightarrow \longrightarrow All \longrightarrow \bigcirc \longrightarrow Enter your Handset Code \longrightarrow **YES** \longrightarrow \bigcirc

 If a preinstalled S! Appli is deleted, Reset All does not restore the application.

View S! Appli Properties

[Details]

S! Appli Library Select an S! Appli → Details → •

[ools · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	• 8-2
Fools About Tools About Tools	· 8-2
Calendar/Tasks · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· 8-4
Saving Events · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· 8-4
Time Table · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· 8-8
Creating a Time Table	. 8-8
Notepad	· 8-9
Using Notepad · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	. 8-9
/oice Recorder · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	8-10
Alarms · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	8-11
Alarms Using Alarms	8-11
Norld Clock	8-12
Calculator/Dictionary · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	8-13
Using the Calculator	8-13
Using the Dictionary (itchen Timer	8-13
Citchen Timer · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	8-14
Measuring Time 5! Quick News	8-14
5! Quick News · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	8-15
Checking for Information Updates · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	8-15
9! Information Channel	8-16
Browsing Updated Information · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	8-16
Electronic Books · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	8-1/
Using BookSurfing® · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	8-1/
Barcode Reader Scanning QR Codes	8-18
Scanning UK Codes	8-18
My Locations	0-19
Saving Location Information to My Locations	8-19
(Uman's Room (Innances)	8-19
Ku-man's Room (Japanese) Opening Ku-man's Room	o-20
Advanced Features · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	0-20
Auvanceu i catules	0-21

About Tools

You can use the following useful functions.

Information Management Tools

Manage information on the handset.



Information Browsing Tools

View and check all kinds of information.

Calendar

View the Calendar and save events. Use information stored in the events to make calls and create messages.

Tasks

Save tasks with time limit.
Set the alarm for deadline, or organize tasks to check based on whether they are Completed, Not Completed or Overdue.

Time Table

Create a time table and check your class schedule.

Notepad

Save notes. You can access saved notes while entering text. This is especially useful if oftenused phrases and memos are saved.

Voice Recorder

Record and play back sounds. The recordings can be sent via mail and set as ringtone.

S! Quick News

Check various pieces of information delivered at a regular interval and S! Loop items from Active Window.

S! Information Channel

Automatically download subscribed information. Use Weather Indicator that posts weather forecast in Standby.

Electronic Books

Use BookSurfing® to view electronic books, comics, albums, etc.

8

S | |

Lifestyle Support Tools

These tools support everyday life.





Other Tools

Barcode Reader

Scan QR codes with the camera, and view and use scanned information.

Ku-man's Room (Japanese)

Visit Ku-man's Room to change his outfit or receive messages from him

Alarms

Set an alarm to sound at a specified time. You can set it to sound on a specific day of the week and use the snooze function.

Dictionary

Install Japanese, English-Japanese and Japanese-English dictionaries on the supplied CD-ROM to a memory card and use them on your handset.

World Clock

View dates and times of cities around the world. Display the date and time of the city (or country) where you live and of another city in Standby.

Kitchen Timer

Set the timer to sound after a specified time expires.

Calculator

Use Calculator that includes, besides basic arithmetic operations, a wide array of useful functions such as percentages, memory and currency conversions.

Ichi Navi

Using the handset location information, you can locate a person carrying the handset, or search for your own handset if you have lost it.



Calendar Window

- " " ", the start time, event title and/or stamp icon are displayed on the date that an event is saved.
- Press ** or #** or or to switch between the previous and next window.
- 2 Press to select a calendar view format
 - You can switch the calendar view between Monthly View, Monthly & Event View, Weekly View, 4-Month View and All View.

Jumping to the Specified Date

- 2 Enter a date⇒•

Saving an Event

From Calendar Window, select the date to save an event→

(Create)



- 2 Select *Title* → ⇒Enter a title → ●
- Select the start date and time field →

 → Date&Time or Date Only → →

 Enter a date and time →
 - Enter the time in accordance with the 24-hour system.
 - Enter only the date, when you select *Date Only*.
- 4 Select *End Date* → ⇒Enter a date and time →
 - Enter the time in accordance with the 24-hour system.
 - If Date Only has been selected for the start date and time, this field cannot be entered.
- 5 Select *Contents* → Enter details of the event → ●

6 Select *Alarm* \Rightarrow **•** \Rightarrow *ON* \Rightarrow **•**



Event Alarm Setting Window

- 7 Select *Time* → ⇒Enter a date and time → ⇒ (OK)
 - Enter the time in accordance with the 24-hour system.
- Press (OK)⇒OK⇒•
 - If you select Notify Only Once when a confirmation window appears telling that the alarm will not start if the power is turned off, this window will not be displayed from the next time.

Alarm Time Operations

The alarm stops automatically after a set duration, but you can also stop it manually.

- Press any key while the alarm is sounding
 - To view the event details, press (View) after stopping the alarm.

80 Tools

Checking an Event

From Calendar Window, select the date to check → ●



Daily View Window

- 2 Select an event⇒•
 - From All View Window, select an event and press to display the Event Details Window.



Event Details Window

Deleting an Event

- From Daily View Window, select the event to delete
- 2 Press ¬→Delete→•
- 3 Select $One \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow YES \Rightarrow \bigcirc$
 - To delete all events for the day: Select *For this Day* → YES → •

Deleting All Previous Events

- From Calendar Window, select the next day of the event to delete
- Press ¬Delete → →Before Today → → →YES → •

Saving Tasks

- 2 Press ¬→Create New→●



New Task Window

- 3 Select *Title*→ ⇒Enter a title → ●
- 4 Select *Deadline* → ⇒Enter a date and time →
 - Enter the time in accordance with the 24-hour system.
- 5 Select *Contents* → Enter details of the task → ●
- 6 Select $Alarm \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow ON \Rightarrow \bullet$



Task Alarm Setting Window

- 7 Select *Time* → Enter a date and time → → ② (OK)
 - Enter the time in accordance with the 24-hour system.
- 8 Press (OK)⇒*OK*⇒⊙
 - If you select Notify Only Once when a confirmation window appears telling that the alarm will not start if the power is turned off, this window will not be displayed from the next time.

Alarm Time Operations

The alarm stops automatically after a set duration, but you can also stop it manually.

- Press any key while the alarm is sounding
 - To view the task details, press (View) after stopping the alarm.

Checking Tasks



Tasks Window

- To change the view format:
 Press ¬→ Change View → → Select a view format → ●
- To change the status of a task: Select a task
 Select the status

Deleting a Task

- From Tasks Window, select the task to delete
- Press \triangleright \rightarrow $Delete \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow One \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$

More Features



Functions for Calendar (▶ page 8-21) Functions for Saving Events/Tasks

(page 8-21)

Functions for Saving Events

(**>** page 8-22)

Functions for Saving Tasks

(**>** page 8-22)

Functions for Checking/Managing Events (▶ page 8-22)

Functions for Checking/Managing Tasks
(▶ page 8-23)



Settings for Saving Events

(page 12-31)

- Change Alarm Volume
- Change Vibration
- Set the Image to Display at the Set Time
- · Set the Stamp Icon
- Set a Category of the Event
- Set a Phone Number/E-mail Address/URL
- Set a Link to a Related Message/Web Page/ Image
- Set a Location

Settings for Calendar (▶ page 12-32)

- Set the View Format When Opening Calendar
- Change the Font Color of Events
- Lock Calendar

Settings for Saving Tasks (▶ page 12-32) • Change Alarm Volume • Change Vibration

- Set the Image to Display at the Set Time
 Set the Stamp Icon
 Set Task Priority

- Set the Task Status

Settings for Tasks (page 12-33)

Lock Tasks

Creating a Time Table

A time table from Monday to Saturday can be created

Subjects and classrooms of up to eight periods per day, and font colors can be entered/specified.

Press $\bullet \Rightarrow Tools \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow Time\ Table$ $\Rightarrow (\bullet)$



Time Table Window

2 Select a period $\Rightarrow \forall x \Rightarrow Edit \Rightarrow \bullet$



Time Table Edit Window

3 Select Subject → • → Enter a subject **⇒**(•)

- To enter a classroom, teacher or memo: Select an item → • Enter information
- To specify the background or font color: Select **BG Color** or **Font Color** $\Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow$ Select a background or a font color → (•)
- Press 🗊 (OK)

Checking the Time Table

From Time Table Window, select a period **→** (•)

Deleting a Class from Time Table

- From Time Table Window, select the period to delete
- 2 Press $\neg Delete \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow One \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow$ $YES \Rightarrow \bullet$

More Features



Time Table Functions



Time Table Settings page 12-33)

- Set Start/End Time of a Period
- · Reset Time Settings to Default

8



Notepad List Window

- **2** Select a blank notepad⇒●
- 3 Enter contents → •

Setting Category

- From Notepad List Window, select the notepad to set an icon for $\Rightarrow \nabla r \Rightarrow Set$ *Category* → (•)
- 2 Select a category → The icon of the selected category is displayed.

Viewing Notepad

From Notepad List Window, select the notepad to check → •

Deleting a Notepad

- From Notepad List Window, select the notepad to delete
- 2 Press $\nabla Delete \Rightarrow \bullet Dne \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow$ $YES \Rightarrow (\bullet)$

More Features



Notepad Functions

(page 8-23)

- If the handset receives a call while you are recording, the recording stops and is automatically saved in order to give priority to the call. If you don't want to receive calls while you are recording, set the handset to Offline Mode.
- Press → Tools → → Useful Tools →

 → Voice Recorder → ●



Voice Recorder Window

2 Select *Record* → ● (twice)



Voice Recorder Recording Window

- Press to end recording.
- You record through a microphone (mouthpiece).
- Press (Pause) to pause recording. To resume recording, press . To save the recording data, press (Save).
- Sounds recorded with Voice Recorder are automatically saved in the *Ring Song* • *Tone* folder.
- When the remaining time available for recording is less than 10 seconds,
 REC flashes

Playing Recordings

- From Voice Recorder Window, select

 Recordings ●
- 2 Select *Phone Memory* or *Memory*Card → ●
- **3** Select a file⇒●
 - Use ③ during playback to adjust the volume.

More Features



Voice Recorder Functions (▶ page 8-23)

8

Setting an Alarm



Alarm List Window

2 Select an alarm⇒•



Set Alarm Window

- 3 Select *Time* → ⇒Enter a time →
 - Enter the time in accordance with the 24-hour system.

- 4 Select *Once* → Select a repeat interval →
 - When you select *Weekly*, do the following.
 Select day(s) of the week
 ⇒ (OK)
- 5 Select $Snooze \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc ON \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc \rightarrow Enter$ a time between alarm tones $\rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$
- 6 Press (OK)⇒OK⇒•
 - If you select Notify Only Once when a confirmation window appears telling that the alarm will not start if the power is turned off, this window will not be displayed from the next time.

Alarm Time Operations

The alarm stops automatically after a set duration, but you can also stop it manually.

Press any key while the alarm is sounding

When Snooze is Set

If Snooze is set to *ON*, the alarm plays in specified intervals up to five additional times.
To stop Snooze and return to Standby:
Stop the alarm Stop Snooze YES

Canceling an Alarm

- From Alarm List Window, select the alarm to cancel
- Press 🗑 (ON/OFF)

Deleting an Alarm

- From Alarm List Window, select the alarm to delete
- 2 Press $\searrow \Rightarrow Reset \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow YES \Rightarrow \bullet$

More Features



Alarm Functions

(> page 8-24)



Alarm Settings

(page 12-35)

- Change Alarm Volume
- Change Vibration
- Set the Image to Display at the Set Time

8

Tools

Setting World Clock

Setting City 1/City 2

Press ● Settings → Phone

Settings → Clock → World

Clock → ●



World Clock Setting Window

Select City 1 or City $2 \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow \bigcirc$ to select a city $\Rightarrow \bigcirc$

Switching the Main City

- From World Clock Setting Window, select Set as Main City (*)
- 2 Select City 1 or City 2⇒•

Displaying World Clock

In the World Clock Window, you can view dates, time, and time difference by moving a cursor (yellow line) on the map. City 1 and City 2 of the World Clock settings are displayed in green and red lines respectively.

Press ● → Tools → ● Useful Tools →

● → World Clock → ●



World Clock Window

- 2 Use 📀 to select a city
 - To switch Daylight Saving Time (DST) on or off, press (DSTon) or (DSToff).

More Features



World Clock Functions





World Clock Settings (▶ page 12-35)

- Set the City by the GMT Time Difference
- Set Daylight Saving Time (DST)

Calculator/Dictionary

Using the Calculator





Calculator Window

Operations in the Calculator Window

Enter Numbers	0 to ~9 s
+	③
_	©
×	•
÷	⊙
=	•
± (Switch +/-)	/
Tax	
C (Clear)	2U7/x€
. (Decimal)	\$7P
EXIT	POWER

• Other Options by Pressing \(\subseteq \) in the Calculator Window

Converter: Enter the currency exchange rate and then perform currency conversion calculations.

Clear All: Delete the input value and data stored in memory.

MS: Save the input value to memory. M+: Add the input value to the value stored in memory.

MR: Display the value stored in memory.

%: Calculate a percentage. 1/X: Calculate a reciprocal.

SQRT: Calculate a square root.

Set Tax Rate: Set the tax rate to be calculated when you press 7. Enter the tax rate and press (•).

Using the Dictionary

The following dictionary data ("Jispa") is included on the supplied CD-ROM: Japanese (approx. 40 thousand words), English-Japanese (approx. 40 thousand words) and Japanese-English (approx. 36 thousand words) dictionaries.

• Install the dictionary data on a memory card from the supplied CD-ROM. For details, see the instructions on the CD-ROM

> "Jispa" of Gakken Co., Ltd. is bundled as Japanese dictionary, English-Japanese dictionary and Japanese-English dictionary.

Press $\bullet \Rightarrow Tools \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow Dictionary \Rightarrow \bullet$



Dictionary Selection Window

- 2 Select Japanese, English-Japanese or Japanese-English → •
- Press ➡ ⇒Enter a keyword → •
- Select a word⇒ •

More Features



Functions for Calculator (page 8-24)

- Press → Tools → → Useful Tools →

 → Kitchen Timer → ●
- 2 Enter a countdown time⇒●
- 3 Press (Start)



Kitchen Timer Window

 Press (Stop) during the count to temporarily stop the timer. To restart, press
 (Start).

After a Specified Time Elapses

The alarm sounds or the handset vibrates, and the External Light flashes.

 Press • to stop the alarm when the handset is closed.

S! Quick News

Confirm various pieces of the latest news delivered by information service providers and S! Loop items from Active Window by automatic updates recurring every period of time as you have specified.

Checking for Information Updates

Registering Contents

Press $\bigcirc \Rightarrow Entertainment \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow S!$ Quick News $\Rightarrow \bigcirc$



S! Quick News Window

2 Select List or S! Loop List→•





List Window

S! Loop List Window

- 3 Select *Contents List* or $S! Loop \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow$ $YES \Rightarrow \bigcirc$
- 4 Select contents ⇒
 - Follow the onscreen instructions to register contents.

Checking for Updates

- Select contents from List Window or S! Loop List Window → •
- 2 Select the item to check ⇒ ●

More Features



Functions for S! Quick News





Active Window Settings (▶ page 12-6)

- Select S! Quick News Information to be Displayed
- Set Ticker Speed
- Set Updated Information Display
- · Set Image Display for New Information
- Delete All Registered Contents from S! Quick News and S! Loop Lists

8

Browsing Updated Information

Subscribe to contents and receive automatic updates. Content updates are received during the night.

 Packet transmission fees apply to use ST Information Channel

Subscribing/Canceling Subscription

Connect your handset to a special site to register or cancel transmission information and select programs.

- Communication fees apply while you are connected to the Web
- Press \bullet \Rightarrow *Entertainment* \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow Info Channel ⇒ (•)



Info Channel Window

- 2 Select Reg./Cancel \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow YES \Rightarrow \bigcirc
 - Follow the onscreen instructions

Checking Content Updates

From Info Channel Window, select What's new?⇒ (•)

Checking the Latest Information from Information Prompt

When Information Prompt appears

→ Info Channel ⇒ (•)

Using Weather Indicator

Weather Indicator shows the weather forecast for the current local area with icons in Standby. The displayed icons are updated automatically.

 A separate subscription is required to use Weather Indicator.

Checking Weather Forecast

From Info Channel Window, select Weather Icon → •



Weather Icon Window

- 2 Select Weather ⇒
 - You can view the weather forecast by selecting Weather Indicator icons and pressing • from Active Window (page 2-10).

More Features



S! Information Channel (> page 8-25)





S! Information Channel Settings (page 12-36)

- Do Not Display Weather Indicator Icons in Standby
- Set Notification of Weather Forecast Updates

8

Using BookSurfing®

BookSurfing® is a viewer to view electronic comic books, electronic photo albums, electronic publications (novels, etc.), and other electronic books.

You can enlarge or reduce images, scroll the window with simple operations, and use sound, vibration, and other effects to enhance your reading experience.

• Some electronic books may require a content key for viewing.

Supported File Formats

BookSurfing®

CCF (.CCF)

- Titles of unsupported file formats are not displayed.
- Press \bullet \Rightarrow Entertainment \Rightarrow \bullet
- 2 Select *BookSurfing* →
 - For the following operations, see BookSurfing® help.

8

100

Scanning QR Codes

About OR Codes

The camera allows you to scan OR codes and save them as OR code data. Connect to a URI included in the scanned information, create a message to send to an address included in the scanned information or save it to Phone Book



- The camera may not be able to scan a QR code that is dirty or in the dark.
- Some QR codes cannot be scanned depending on the size or version.

Scanning a QR Code

Press $\bullet \Rightarrow Tools \Rightarrow \bullet \cup Seful Tools \Rightarrow$ (•) ⇒Scan Data ⇒ (•)



Scan Data Window

2 Select Scan ⇒ •



Scanning Window

- 3 Frame a QR code in the Display →
 - Use to adjust the exposure.
 - When the OR code has been divided into data areas, select YES to scan the other data areas. When all the areas are scanned, the QR code data is displayed.



Scan Results Window



Checking Saved Data

- From Scan Data Window, select Scanned Data → (•)
- **?** Select QR code data → •

More Features

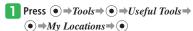


Scanning QR Codes



(page 8-26)

Location information contained in pictures, Phone Book or My Details can be accessed and saved to My Locations.





My Locations Window

2 Select an empty My Locations list item



3 Add location information → ● → Enter a title → ●

Ichi Navi

Ichi Navi allows you to find out other people's current position.

- Press → Tools → → Ichi Navi →
 - Follow the onscreen instructions.

More Features



My Locations

(page 8-26)

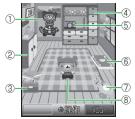
8

1001

Opening Ku-man's Room

- Press ・ → エンタテイメント (Entertainment) → ・ ・ → 〈 まんの部屋 (Ku-man's Room) → ・
- 2 Select 超移 (Open)⇒ *YES* or *NO*
- You cannot visit Ku-man's Room if the language setting is set to English. Set 言語 選択 (Language) to 日韓 (Japanese).

About Ku-man's Room



Ku-man's Room

© Dora communications

①Poster

You can change posters.

2 Change Cloths

Contains Ku-man's clothes.

③Treasure Chest

Contains Ku-man's treasures.

4Closet

It is decorated with many different types of trophies.

5 Take Pictures

You can take pictures of Ku-man.

- **⑥Album**Albums with pictures of Ku-man.
- Change! Standby Ku-man changes his outfit by putting on a plush toy.
- ®Ku-man

Ku-man is a foot-loose and fancy free baby star bear. He sometimes goes off on journeys.

Playing with Ku-man

Look in Ku-man's Treasure Chest, change the outfit of Ku-man in Standby or take photos.

Example: Changing the outfit of Ku-man in Standby

- In Ku-man's Room, press
 Now you can operate Ku-man's Room.
- 2 Press 窗(前へ (Previous))/ ☜(次へ (Next)) to select かりか/(Change!) ⇒ ●

- 3 Select an outfit⇒●
 - Ku-man in his room wears the clothes from before the change.

Checking Messages from Ku-man

Ku-man sends mail after you open his room for the first time, when he goes on trips and other times.

Sometimes there are presents attached to messages from Ku-man.

- In Ku-man's Room, press シー・メール (Ku-man Mail) → ●
- 2 Select a message → •

More Features



Ku-man's Room (Japanese)

(page 8-26)

0

Setting Ku-man for Standby (Japanese)
(▶ page 12-36)

• Set Ku-man to be Displayed in Standby

80 Tools

Advanced Features

Information Management Tools

	From Calendar Window
page 8-4	Create Event Window
page 8-4	Event Alarm Setting Window
page 8-5	Daily View Window
page 8-5	Event Details Window
page 8-5	New Task Window
page 8-5	Task Alarm Setting Window
page 8-6	Tasks Window

Functions for Calendar

Change the Color of Calendar Dates [Set Holiday]

Changing the Color of a Specified Date

Calendar Window Select a date → \(\nabla \) → Set

Holiday → \(\oldsymbol{\chi} \) → Current Day → \(\oldsymbol{\chi} \) → Select a color or Deactivate → \(\oldsymbol{\chi} \)

■Changing the Color of a Specified Day of the Week

Calendar Window → Set Holiday → →

Select Week → → Select a day of the week →

Select a color → → □ □

Functions for Saving Events/Tasks

Set the Alarm Tone

[Alarm Tone]

Event Alarm Setting Window / Task Alarm Setting Window

Tone

■Setting a Sound Preinstalled in the Handset as the Alarm Tone

Patterns or **Melodies** \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow Select an alarm tone \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow \bigcirc (twice) \Rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc

■Setting a File Saved in Data Folder/ Memory Card as the Alarm Tone

Phone Memory or Memory Card \Rightarrow \Rightarrow Select a file \Rightarrow o (twice) \Rightarrow o (twice) \Rightarrow OK

■Setting the Time Reader as the Alarm Tone

Time Reading $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ (twice) $\rightarrow OK \rightarrow \bigcirc$

Set the Alarm Ring Time

[Duration]

Event Alarm Setting Window / Task Alarm Setting Window

Duration ○ → Enter a ring time* ○ →

Tolk (twice) → OK → ○

Display the Events/Tasks for Today or Tomorrow at the Specified Time

[Reminder]

 Calendar Window
 / Tasks Window
 >>> Settings >>

 • → Reminder
 • • • ON → • • → Time →

 • • DEnter a time
 • • □

- Enter the time in accordance with the 24-hour system.
- ■Setting Display

Today → • → Today or Tomorrow → • →

■Setting a File Preinstalled in the Handset as the Alarm Tone

Set Alarm $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ Tone $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ Patterns or Melodies $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ Select an alarm tone $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ (twice)

■Setting a File Saved in Data Folder/ Memory Card as the Alarm Tone

Set Alarm $\Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow$ Tone $\Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow$ Phone

Memory or Memory Card $\Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow$ Select a file $\Rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$ (twice) $\Rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$ (twice)

■Setting the Alarm Volume

Set Alarm → O→Volume → O→Adjust the volume → O→S (twice)

■Setting Vibration

Set Alarm → • Vibration → • Select a vibration pattern → • • (twice)

■Setting the Alarm Ring Time

Set Alarm → **O** → **Duration** → **O** → Enter a ring time → **O** → **O** (twice)

■Setting Alarm Repeats

Once → • Select an item → • →

Hide Special Events/Tasks

[Hide]

Create Event Window / New Task Window Options > Show/Hide Options > Hide Options

Functions for Saving Events

Save Periodic Events

[Repeat Setting]

Create Event Window Options → • → Repeat for → • → Daily, Weekly, Monthly, Yearly or End of Month → • → Enter a repeat duration → •

- If you set the start date to the last day of the month, you can set Repeat for to End of Month.
- To repeat infinitely, enter "00".
- If you set *Monthly* for the 30th or 31st, the repetition is only set for months that include that date.

- If an event set to repeat daily, weekly, etc. is deleted, a message asks if you wish to cancel repeat features. Select *Do not Repeat* to delete the event for that day only.
- Canceling a single date of a repeated event may not be effective if the event is sent as vObject (page 2-33) and received by another device.

Edit a Saved Event

[Edit Event]

Daily View Window Select an event $\Rightarrow Edit \Rightarrow$

Select an item → Edit the item → Overwrite or Save as New → Overwrite or S

Functions for Saving Tasks

Edit a Saved Task

[Edit Task]

Tasks Window Select a task → ♥ → **Edit → ● → Select an item → ● → Edit the item → ● → ● Overwrite or Save as New → ●

Functions for Checking/Managing Events

Use Information Stored in the Event [Call/Create Message/Access URL]

■Calling or Sending a Message to the Stored Phone Number

Event Details Window Select the phone number ->

- (twice)⇒Voice Call or Create Mail⇒ ●
- When you select *Voice Call*, do the following.

 >> Voice Call or Video Call → ●
- Sending a Message to the Stored E-mail Address

Event Details Window Select the e-mail address → (twice)

■Connecting to the Stored URL

Event Details Window Select the URL → ● (twice) → YES → ●

Use Related Information Stored in the Event
[To Messages/To Saved Pages/To Pictures]

Event Details Window To Messages, To Saved Pages or To Pictures •

80 Tools

Use Information Stored in Contents [Call/Create Message/Save Sender/Access URL]

Event Details Window Select the *Contents* field → Select the information → Voice Call, Create Mail, Save Sender or Connect → •

Delete Multiple Events

[Select Multi]

Calendar Window \Longrightarrow Switch to All View \Longrightarrow Delete \Longrightarrow Select Multi \Longrightarrow Select events \Longrightarrow \Longrightarrow YES \Longrightarrow

Delete All Events

[Delete All]

Calendar Window ► Delete → • All → •

Enter your Handset Code → YES → •

Functions for Checking/Managing Tasks

Use Information Stored in the Task [Call/Create Message/Save Sender/Access URL]

Tasks Window Select a task → ● → Select the **Contents** field → ● → Select the information → **Voice Call, Create Mail, Save Sender** or **Connect** → ●

Delete Multiple Tasks

[Select Multi]

Tasks Window ► Delete • Select Multi
• Select tasks • Factor YES •

Delete All Tasks

[Delete All]

Tasks Window ► Delete • • All • • • Enter your Handset Code • YES • •

 When Change View is set to other than All View, you cannot delete all tasks.

Time Table Functions

From Time Table Window page 8-8

Copy a Class on Time Table

[Copy]

Time Table Window Select a period → Copy → Copy → Select the destination period → ©

 To copy to multiple periods, repeat selecting a destination period and pressing

 as many times as required.

Delete All Classes from Time Table [Delete All]

Time Table Window Delete All Delete All Delete PEnter your Handset Code YES

Notepad Functions

From Notepad List Window page 8-9

Edit a Notepad

[Edit Notepad]

Notepad List Window Select a notepad with contents stored → ⊕ → Edit the notepad → → YES → •

Delete All Notepads

[Delete All]

Notepad List Window Delete All

Enter your Handset Code YES

O

Voice Recorder Functions

From Voice Recorder Window page 8-10

Change the Storage Location of Recordings

[Select Storage]

Voice Recorder Window Record → → → → Select Storage → → Phone Memory or Memory Card → (•)

 A memory card must be inserted to configure these settings.

Alarm Functions

From Alarm List Window page 8-11
Set Alarm Window page 8-11

Change an Alarm Name

[Alarm Name]

Change the Alarm Tone

[Alarm Tone]

Set Alarm Window Alarm Tone → Tone →

Setting a Sound Preinstalled in the Handset as the Alarm Tone

Patterns or **Melodies** \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow Select an alarm tone \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow \bullet \bullet (twice) \Rightarrow \bullet \bullet

■Setting a File Saved in Data Folder/ Memory Card as the Alarm Tone

Phone Memory or Memory Card \Rightarrow \Rightarrow Select a file \Rightarrow \bullet (twice) \Rightarrow \bullet (twice) \Rightarrow \bullet \bullet

■ Setting the Time Reader as the Alarm Tone

Change the Alarm Ring Time

[Duration]

Set Alarm Window Alarm Tone \longrightarrow Duration \longrightarrow Enter a ring time \longrightarrow \bigcirc (twice) \longrightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc

Edit an Alarm

[Edit Alarm]

Alarm List Window Select an alarm $\rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$ Select an item $\rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$ Edit the item $\rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc K$

Delete All Alarms

[Reset All]

Alarm List Window \nearrow **Reset All** \rightarrow \bigcirc **Enter** your Handset Code \rightarrow **YES** \rightarrow \bigcirc

World Clock Functions

From World Clock Setting Window page 8-12

Edit a City Name

[Rename City]

World Clock Setting Window City 1 or City 2 →
 to select a city → Rename City →

Enter a city name →

Functions for Calculator

From Calculator Window page 8-13

Calculate Currency Conversion

[Converter]

Calculator Window P Converter S Sub Currency Sub Currency Sub Currency Exchange Rate S Enter a rate Converter S To Main or To Sub S

Functions for S! Quick News

From S! Quick News Window page 8-15
List Window page 8-15
S! Loop List Window page 8-15

Update Lists Automatically

[Auto Update]

S! Quick News Window Settings $\Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow Auto$ Update $\Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow Flash News, News \text{ or } S!$ Loop $\Rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$

■Setting Flash News to Update Automatically

Select the time interval for the automatic update $(\bullet) \bullet (\circ) \bullet (\circ) \bullet (\circ) \bullet (\circ) \bullet (\circ)$

Setting News/S! Loop to Update Automatically

Automatic $\Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow YES \Rightarrow \bigcirc$

- S! Quick News (Flash News) and S! Loop List updates do not take place during late hours at night.
- Automatic update may not occur if your handset is outside the service area or signal reception is poor.
- If automatic updates stop for some reason, performing a manual update (page 2-10) can restart the automatic updates.

Delete Registered Contents and Items [Delete/Delete All]

■Deleting One Entry

List Window / S! Loop List Window > Delete → Delete → One → One → YES → O

■Deleting All Entries

List Window \nearrow \Rightarrow Delete \Rightarrow \Rightarrow All \Rightarrow \Rightarrow Enter your Handset Code \Rightarrow $YES \Rightarrow \bigcirc$

S! Information Channel

From Info Channel Window page 8-16
Weather Icon Window page 8-16

Download Unreceived Information [Get Latest]

Info Channel Window Get Latest → → YES→

A connection is established to the redelivery page.

- You can download only the latest information.
 Content cannot be downloaded on nondelivery days.
- Requesting Redelivery from Information Prompt

Check Past Updates

[History]

Info Channel Window **History** → Select the information → •

Update Weather Forecast Manually [Update Weather Forecast]

Weather Icon Window $Update \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow YES \Rightarrow \bigcirc$

Use Scan Results

[Call/Send Message/To Phone Book/ Access URL]

Scan Results Window | Select the information ⇒ (•) ⇒ Call, Send Message or To Phone Book → (•)

• When a URL is scanned, select YES after selecting the URL.

Paste Scan Results into Message Text [To Message]

Scan Results Window > → To Message → •



Use Location Information

[To Locations]

Scan Results Window ¬¬¬ To Locations → (•) **Use Location Information** [Open Map/Location Mail/To Phone Book/ Update/Delete/Edit Title]

From My Locations Window page 8-19

My Locations Window \\ \rightarrow \rightarrow Open Map, Location Mail, To Phone Book, Update, Delete or Edit Title → (•)

i! Town (Japanese)/S! Loop (Japanese) · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	• 9-2
5! Friend's Status ······	• 9-3
About S! Friend's Status · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	. 9-3
Using S! Friend's Status · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	. 9-4
i! Circle Talk·····	• 9-6
About S! Circle Talk · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· 9-6
Using S! Circle Talk · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	. 9-7
Advanced Features · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	. 9-9

S! Town (Japanese)/S! Loop (Japanese)

Using S! Town

S! Town is an online 3D virtual space. Enjoy S! Town virtual space e.g. chatting or shopping.

- When you use S! Town for the first time, a user registration (free) and profile registration are required. Please read and agree to the terms of service before the registration.
- Packet transmission fees apply to use S! Town. The fees may be expensive.
- If you subscribe to Website access restrictions, you cannot use S! Town.
- Press *→Communications* → ●
- 2 Select S! Town → •

S! Town⇒ (Libr.)

- You can cancel the S! Town service by selecting S!タウン (S! Town) from マイメニュー (My Menu) of Yahoo! Keitai.
- Upgrade notification may appear when you start S! Town. Follow the onscreen instructions to upgrade S! Town.
- About the Library Downloaded S! Appli that expand the functions of S! Town are automatically stored in the Library. To check S! Appli in the Library:

 Press Communications →

Using S! Loop

Use S! Loop to keep a diary on the web or exchange information via BBS.

- Press *Communications* → ●
- 2 Select S! Loop $\Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow YES \Rightarrow \bigcirc$

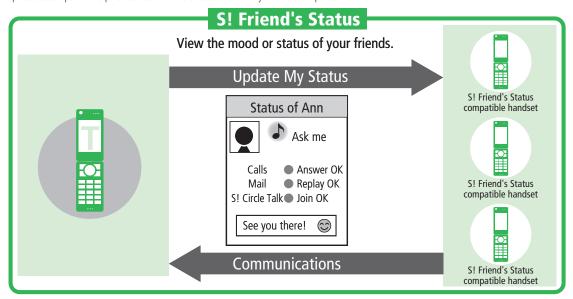
S! Friend's Status

About S! Friend's Status

S! Friend's Status is a function that lets you share your current mood and availability to receive incoming calls, messages or S! Circle Talk calls with your friends that are on your S! Friend's Status Members List.

It is possible to check your S! Friend's Status from Standby by adding the members to Active Window.

• A separate subscription is required to use S! Friend's Status. A monthly fee is also required.



• S! Friend's Status is unavailable if IP Service is set to OFF.

Using S! Friend's Status

Setting Your Own Status (My Status)

🚹 Press and hold 🖭



My Status Window

- Press Online / Offline → → Online →
 → YES →
 - To go offline: Select *Offline* → ● (Update)
- 3 Select a status such as ¿¿‡/// (Good mood) or something → ⇒ Select an item → ●

- 4 Select an Answer Status → ⇒ Select an item →
 - To change all your Answer Statuses at once:
 Press ♥ (All) ⇒Select an item⇒ ◆
 Check the settings ⇒ ●
- 5 Select the Comment field → Enter a comment → ●
- 6 Press 🗑 (Update)
- If you switch to offline, you and other people cannot check each others' current condition.
 Also, you will not be able to create S! Friend's Status Members List or talk to people with S! Circle Talk.

Adding Members

When you add a person to your S! Friend's Status Members List, an invitation is sent.

- You can only add friends who have a SoftBank handset that supports S! Friend's Status to your S! Friend's Status Members List.
- To create an S! Friend's Status Members List, set My Status to *Online*.
- When the person accepts your invitation, you receive a Saving Completed notification, and you and the person can check out each other's status.
- 2 Press (Add) → Phone Book or Direct Input →
 - If you select *Phone Book*, you can search Phone Book entries in the handset (not those in the USIM Card or memory card).
- 3 Select a member or enter a phone number →
 - To select a group: Select

 Select a group

 Select a group

 ●
- 4 Press (Save) → YES → ○
 A Saving Request notification is sent to the person, and Waiting is displayed in the SI Friend's Status Members List window

 A Saving Failed notification is sent when a person's S! Friend's Status Members List already contains 30 people.

Adding a Member from Saving Request

If someone wants to add you to their S! Friend's Status Members List, you will receive a Saving Request notification. If you accept, the other person is saved to the S! Friend's Status Members List and you and the person can check out each other's status.

- Information Prompt appears ⇒

 Notification ⇒ ●
- Select a Saving Request notification ⇒
 (•) ⇒ YES ⇒ (•)
 - If you select NO, a Saving Failed notification is returned to the other person and the person is not saved to the S! Friend's Status Members List.
- If you select NO and a Saving Failed notification is returned to the other person, you cannot send the person an invitation to the S! Friend's Status Members List for 24 hours.
- Although you select NO and a Saving Failed notification is returned to the other person, if the other person does not receive the notification because he/she is outside the service area or offline for more than 24 hours, you will receive another Saving Request notification when the person comes online.

Checking S! Friend's Status

Press ● → Communications → ● →
Friend Status → ●



S! Friend's Status Members List Window

- 2 Select a group with 📀
- 3 Select a member with ♦



S! Friend's Status Details Window

More Features



S! Friend's Status Functions

(page 9-9)



Settings for S! Friend's Status

(page 12-37)

- Edit Status Settings of My Status
- Save Members to Active Window
- Ignore Saving Requests from People Not in Phone Book
- Ignore All Saving Requests

Settings for S! Friend's Status/S! Circle Talk (▶ page 12-37)

Disable S! Friend's Status/S! Circle Talk

S! Circle Talk

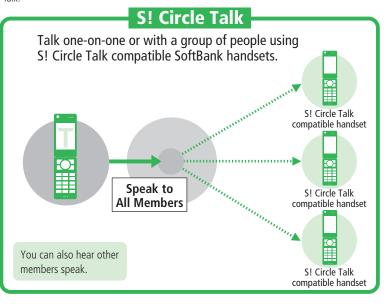
About S! Circle Talk

S! Circle Talk is a walkie-talkie style communication service. Talk one-on-one or with a group of people (up to ten people) using S! Circle Talk compatible SoftBank handsets.

Press and hold the key to talk (one person at a time) and release the key when finished talking. Check

the S! Circle Talk window to check each participant's status and see who is currently talking.

• You must subscribe to S! Friend's Status to use S! Circle Talk. Connection fees apply for using S! Circle Talk.



- S! Circle Talk is unavailable if IP Service is set to OFF
- S! Circle Talk is unavailable if S! Friend's Status is set to *Offline*. Switch to *Online* (page 9-4) to use S! Circle Talk.
- Š! Čircle Talk is unavailable during voice or video calls. Also, you cannot receive another S! Circle Talk call during S! Circle Talk.

Using S! Circle Talk

Adding Members

Adding a Person

- Press → Communications → →
 Circle Talk →
 - A confirmation window appears the first time you start.
- Press ¬→Add Members→•
 - If no one is on the S! Circle Talk Members List, press (Add).



Add Members Window

- 3 Select Personal → → Phone Book, Friend Status or Direct Input → ●
 - If you select *Phone Book*, you can search Phone Book entries in the handset (not those in the USIM Card or memory card).
- 4 Select a member or enter a phone number → ●

Creating a Group

Organize entries by Group to make an S! Circle Talk call to a group of people.

- From Add Members Window, select

 Group → → Create New → ○
- 2 Select Empty → → Phone Book, Friend Status or Direct Input → ●
 - If you select *Phone Book*, you can search Phone Book entries in the handset (not those in the USIM Card or memory card).
- 3 Select a member or enter a phone number →
 - To save more members, repeat 2 and 3.
 - If you want to change a member's phone number, select the member, press twice, and then enter the phone number.
- Press (Add) ⇒Enter a group name

 → •

Adding a Group from S! Friend's Status Members List

- From Add Members Window, select

 Group • Friend Status •
- 2 Select a group → •

Initiating S! Circle Talk

- Enter a phone number, and then press and hold
 - To initiate S! Circle Talk from the S! Circle Talk Members List:
 - Press → Communications → → Circle Talk → → Select a person or group → (©T)/[•]
- 2 Press and hold o to talk
 - Talk when Myself appears.
 - Initiator can talk as soon as S! Circle Talk is connected.
 - Myself disappears after 30 seconds and the floor is released.
 - Only one person can talk at a time.



- 3 To sign off, press $\Longrightarrow YES \Longrightarrow \bullet$
 - When only one person remains, the S! Circle Talk ends automatically.

Joining S! Circle Talk

Press • (Answer) when S! Circle Talk invitation arrives

S! Circle Talk is connected.

- To reject the connection, press (Reject).
- Alternatively, press to answer.

S! Circle Talk Operations

Calling Another Member

entry
●

- During an S! Circle Talk, press $\triangleright \Rightarrow$ $Add \Rightarrow \bullet$
- 2 Select *Members List* → Select a member →
 - To call a person from the S! Friend's Status Members List:
 Select Friend Status → Select an
 - To call a person from Phone Book:
 Select *Phone Book* → Select an entry → Select a phone number → ●
 - To enter a phone number directly:
 Select *Direct Input*

 Enter a phone number

Adjusting the Speaker (Earpiece) Volume

1 During an S! Circle Talk, use 🔇

Switching Between Earpiece & Speaker

During an S! Circle Talk, press

More Features



S! Circle Talk Functions (▶ page 9-10)



Settings for S! Friend's Status/S! Circle
Talk (▶ page 12-37)

• Disable S! Friend's Status/S! Circle Talk

Advanced Features

Communications

S! Friend's Status Functions

From S! Friend's Status Members List Window page 9-5

S! Friend's Status Details Window page 9-5

Add a Member

[Add Members]

S! Friend's Status Members List Window Select a member other than yourself (My Status) ⇒ ▼ → Add Members → ●

Delete Members

[Deletion Request]

S! Friend's Status Members List Window Select a group

■Deleting One Member

Select a member \rightarrow \bigcirc $\rightarrow Delete \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow One \rightarrow$ $\bigcirc \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$

■Deleting Multiple Members

■Deleting All Members

Select a member other than yourself (My Status)

→ ¬ Delete → ○ → All → ○ → Enter your

Handset Code → YES → ○

 After a member is deleted from the S! Friend's Status Members List, you cannot send/receive a Saving Request notification to/from that person for 24 hours.

Move Members to a Different Group [Change Group]

S! Friend's Status Members List Window Select a group

■Moving One Member

■Moving Multiple Members

Select a member other than yourself (My Status)

>>> *Change Group * • *Select Multi

>>> *Select members * • *Select a group * •

■Moving All Members

Select a member other than yourself (My Status)

→ ¬ Change Group → ○ → All → ○ →

Select a group → ○

Edit a Group Name

[Rename]

SI Friend's Status Members List Window | Select a group → \(\sigma) → Rename → \(\oldsymbol{\omega}\) → Edit the group's name → \(\oldsymbol{\omega}\)

Update S! Friend's Status Manually [Status Update]

S! Friend's Status Members List Window ► Settings ► Status Update ► •

Check a Notification

[Notification]

S! Friend's Status Members List Window

Notification

Contact a Member According to Their Current Status

[Call/Send Mail]

■Making a Voice Call/Video Call

■Sending a Message

S! Friend's Status Details Window Select the mail answer status → ← Create a message → ☑

• For details on creating messages, see pages 4-4 and 4-6.

■Initiating S! Circle Talk

S! Friend's Status Details Window Select the S! Circle Talk answer status

S! Circle Talk Functions

Edit S! Circle Talk Members List

[Edit Group]

● Communications → Circle Talk → Select a group from S! Circle Talk Members List → \(\nabla \nabla Edit Group \nabla \nabla \)

■Editing the Group Name

 $Rename \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow Edit the group name \Rightarrow \bullet$

■Adding Members

Change Member → ● → Empty → ● →
Phone Book, Friend Status or Direct Input
→ ● → Select a member or enter a phone
number → ● → ⑤

■Changing a Member's Phone Number

Change Member → ● Select a member →
● (twice) → Enter a phone number → ● → ⑤

■Deleting a Member

Change Member → • Select a member → Delete → • YES → • F

■Deleting All Members

Change Member → • → ¬ Delete All →
• Enter your Handset Code → YES → •

Delete a Group or Person from S! Circle Talk Members List

[Delete/Select Multi/Delete All]

Communications → Circle Talk →

■Deleting One Entry

Select a member or a group $\Rightarrow P$ $\Rightarrow Delete \Rightarrow$ $\bullet \Rightarrow One \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow YES \Rightarrow \bullet \bullet$

■Deleting Multiple Entries

 \nearrow \rightarrow $Delete \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Select \ Multi \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$ $Select \ members \ or \ groups <math>\rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc \nearrow \nearrow YES \rightarrow$ $\bigcirc \bigcirc$

■Deleting All Entries

 \triangleright \rightarrow $Delete \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow All \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$ Enter your Handset Code \rightarrow $YES \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$

Changing Handset Code · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	··10-2
Changing Handset Code · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · 10-2
Prohibiting/Limiting Use · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	·· 10-3
Protecting Handset Information · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
Biometrics · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	••10-5
Using Biometrics · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · 10-5
Advanced Features · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · 10-7

10

Changing Handset Code

Changing Handset Code

- Do not forget your Handset Code and do not reveal it to others. Write down your Handset Code.
- Press \bullet \Rightarrow Settings \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow Security \Rightarrow
 - (•) ⇒ Change Password ⇒ (•)



2 Enter your current Handset Code



3 Enter your new Handset Code



4 Re-enter your new Handset Code for confirmation

Prohibiting/Limiting Use

Activating PIN Settings

Set whether you are requested to enter your PIN to perform verification each time the power is turned on when a USIM Card is inserted in the handset.

Press ● ⇒ Settings → ● ⇒ Security
→ ●



Security Setting Window

- 2 Select PIN Settings \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow $ON/OFF \Rightarrow$ \bigcirc \Rightarrow $ON \Rightarrow$ \bigcirc
- 3 Enter your PIN⇒⊙

Prohibiting Handset Use

Set Password Lock to prevent others from using your handset. When Password Lock is activated, your Handset Code is required to use the handset.



- 2 Select an item to set $\Rightarrow ON \Rightarrow \bigcirc$
 - The settings are shown below.
 Phone Closed: Locks the handset when you close it.

Power Saving: Locks the handset when the Display is turned off for Power Saving.

Power Off: Locks the handset when it is turned on.

- To cancel Password Lock, enter your Handset Code to release Password Lock temporarily, and then set Password Lock to OFF.
- Phone Closed locks the handset when you close it in Standby. Power Saving locks the handset when the Display is turned off after a certain amount of time (as set in the power saving settings) has passed in Standby.
- You cannot make a one-touch call from the Earphone-Microphone while the handset is locked with Password Lock

Setting Keypad Lock

Keypad Lock allows you to disable the keys to prevent unintentional operations while your handset is in your bag or pocket.

- Press and hold
 - To cancel Keypad Lock, press and hold

 while it is set.
- Keypad Lock cannot be set when infrared communication is activated.
- When Keypad Lock is set, Information Prompt does not appear.

Using Secure Remote Lock

By using the Secure Remote Lock service, if your handset is lost or stolen, you can lock the functions of the handset remotely by using a PC or mobile phone.

Once the lock is set, the handset can be turned on but no other functions work.

For more information on conditions for using the Secure Remote Lock, go to http://www.softbank.jp or access My SoftBank from your handset.

Accessing My SoftBank from a Mobile Phone

Press シーメニューリスト (Menu List) → ・

My SoftBank → ●

10

Protecting Handset Information

Prohibiting Use of Phone Book and Other Features

Set Function Lock to prevent unauthorized access to Phone Book, Calendar, Tasks functions, Call Log and Sent/Received Log. When Function Lock is set, your Handset Code must be entered to access these functions/features



2 Select a function $\Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow Lock \Rightarrow \bullet$

Displaying Secret Data

Phone Book entries saved as secret (page 2-19) can be displayed.

From Security Setting Window, select

Secret Mode → ● ⇒Enter your Handset

Code



- 2 Select Show ⇒ •
- Secret Mode is set to *Hide* when handset power is turned off.

More Features



Functions for Prohibiting/Limiting Use (▶ page 10-7)

Biometrics

Using Biometrics

Unlock Password Lock, using the Biometrics feature. The handset identifies the user by verifying the user's face against pre-saved images.

 Your Handset Code is required to set Biometrics or save user images. For security purposes, it is also recommended that you change your Handset Code (page 10-2).

Saving User Images

- Press ⇒ Settings → ⇒ Security
 → ●
- 2 Select *Biometrics* → Enter your Handset Code



Biometrics Setting Window

- 3 Select Save Users → •
- 4 Select a user → → Select an available entry → → Frame your face in the Display → ●

- When framing the image, make sure that the eyes, mouth, nose, eyebrows, and other distinguishing features are clearly visible.
 Proper registration may not be possible if your hair is hanging over your eyes, or if you are wearing a hat. Proper registration also may not be possible if you shoot the image in an area that is too dark or bright.
- Make sure the entire face is visible within the window. The image may not be saved if the entire face is not framed within the window.
- For verification accuracy, save at least three images per user.
- Take each image under different lighting conditions.
- If you plan to wear glasses for authentication, take images with your glasses on. If you wear your glasses occasionally, save images with and without your glasses.

Enabling Biometrics

From Biometrics Setting Window, select *ON/OFF* → ●



2 Select *ON* → • (twice)

Performing Biometric Authentication

Once Biometrics is set to \emph{ON} and Password Lock is set, you can use Biometrics to release Password Lock temporarily when you open the handset, when the Display comes out of Power Saving, and when you turn the power on.

While Password Lock is active, press → Frame your face in the Display

Authentication is performed and Password Lock is released.

The biometric authentication window launches automatically, if you open the handset while Password Lock is active

- Alternatively, enter your Handset Code to release Password Lock while Password Lock is active
- To release Password Lock while the biometric authentication window is displayed, press (Password) and enter your Security Code.

- Biometrics function is not 100% accurate in authenticating user identity. SoftBank assumes no responsibility for any loss or damage suffered in using this feature.
- During biometric authentication, make sure that the eyes, mouth, nose, eyebrows, and other distinguishing features are clearly visible. Proper authentication may not be possible if your hair covers your eyes or if you are wearing a hat. Proper authentication also may not be possible if you shoot the image in an area that is dark or too bright.
- Make sure that the face being authenticated fits fully within the window. Authentication may not be possible if part of the face is outside of the window.

More Features



Functions for Biometrics (▶ page 10-7)

Advanced Features

Security

Functions for Prohibiting/Limiting Use

From Security Setting Window page 10-3

Change PIN/PIN2

[Change PIN/PIN2]

- Set PIN Settings to ON before you change the PIN.
- Do not forget your PIN and do not reveal it to others. Write down your PIN.

Security Setting Window PIN Settings • • • Change PIN or Change PIN2 • • Enter current PIN/PIN2 • • Enter new PIN/PIN2 • • Re-enter new PIN/PIN2 for confirmation • •

Cancel PIN Lock

[Cancel PIN Lock]

While the PIN/PIN2 Lock is set, do an operation that requires PIN/PIN2 entry→Enter PUK/PUK2

→ → Enter new PIN/PIN2 → → Re-enter new PIN/PIN2 for confirmation → ◆

 If the Personal Unblocking Key (PUK) code is incorrectly entered ten times in a row, the USIM Card is locked (USIM lock). If the USIM lock is set, it cannot be canceled. Contact SoftBank General Information (page 13-45).

Restrict Access to the Internet by Inputting URLs

[Web]

Security Setting Window Restricted Mode $\rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$ Web $\rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$ Enter Internet Security Code (page 1-13) $\rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$ Set Regulation $\rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc \rightarrow ON \rightarrow$ \bigcirc

■When Internet Security Code is Not Registered

Security Setting Window Restricted Mode → → → Web → ♠ (twice) → Enter Internet Security Code → ♠ → Re-enter new Internet Security Code for confirmation → ♠ → Do not Save → ♠

- To register a clue to your Internet Security Code, select *Save* and enter a clue.
- **■**Changing Internet Security Code

Security Setting Window Restricted Mode → → → Web → ○ → Enter Internet Security Code → ○ Change Password → ○ (twice) → Enter new Internet Security Code → ○ → Re-enter new Internet Security Code for confirmation → ○ → Do not Save → ○

Do not Save → (•)

• To register a clue to your Internet Security Code, select *Save* and enter a clue.

Functions for Biometrics

From Biometrics Setting Window page 10-5

Edit User Names

[Rename]

Biometrics Setting Window Save Users → → Select a user → ☑ → Rename → ● → Enter a user's name → ●

Reset Registered Users [Reset Registered User]

Biometrics Setting Window Save Users → • → Select a user → ¬ → Reset → • → YES → •

Change/Delete a Face Image [Overwrite/Delete Face Image]

■Changing a Face Image

Biometrics Setting Window Save Users → ● → Select a user → ● → Select an image → ▷ → Overwrite → ● → Take a picture

- For details on taking pictures, see page 6-3.
- ■Deleting a Face Image

Biometrics Setting Window Save Users → ● → Select a user → ● → Select an image → ▷ → Delete → ● → YES → ●

Infrared ·····	11-2
About Infrared · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	11-2
Using Infrared · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	11-2
PC Connection · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	••••••11-4
About PC Connection · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
Memory Card Backup · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	11-6
About Memory Card Backup · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	11-6
S! Addressbook Back-up · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	11-8
About S! Addressbook Back-up·····	11-8
Using S! Addressbook Back-up · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	11-9
Advanced Features · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	11-10

Infrared

About Infrared

Exchange the Calendar data of your handset, Phone Book entries of your handset, memory card or USIM Card, pictures/videos taken or recorded with the camera and Data Folder data that can be forwarded with an infrared compatible device (PC, handset).

Precautions

- A dirty Infrared Port may cause an infrared communication failure. If the Infrared Port is dirty, gently wipe it with a soft cloth while making sure not to scratch the port.
- Do not move the devices until the file transfer is complete.
- Direct sunlight or fluorescent light may interfere with infrared communication.
- If the handset receives a voice/video call while it is sending or receiving files via infrared communication, a fixed incoming image is displayed and a fixed melody ringtone sounds. If you answer the call, the data communication is canceled.
- When sending/receiving vObjects, some information may be altered or not received.
- You cannot use USB functions other than the charge function during infrared communication.
- S! Friend's Status and S! Circle Talk are unavailable while transferring files even if IP Service is set to ON.

 Bring the Infrared Port of your handset to within 20 cm of the Infrared Port of the destination device and align both ports. Make sure no objects are placed between them.



Authentication Password

The authentication password (four digits) is for sending and receiving all data by infrared communication.

When sending or receiving all data, the same authentication password needs to be entered for both the sending and receiving devices.

Using Infrared

Activating Infrared

Set the handset so that it is connected by other compatible devices via infrared communication.

Press $\bullet \Rightarrow Settings \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow Connectivity$ $\Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow Infrared \Rightarrow \bullet$



- 2 Select *ON/OFF* → ●
- 3 Select *ON* ⇒
 - To cancel infrared communication, select **OFF**.
- If the handset does not communicate via infrared communication in three minutes after Infrared has been set to ON, the infrared communication standby is canceled automatically.

Transferring Files

Sending a File

- Access a function that supports infrared
- 2 Select a file $\Rightarrow \nabla \Rightarrow Send \Rightarrow \bullet$
 - Select Send vCard to access from Phone Book.
- 3 Select *Via Infrared* ⇒ **⊙**
- Files without transfer permission and files in Saved Pages cannot be sent.
- Removal of the memory card during file transfer from the memory card may result in loss or damage of files on the memory card.

Receiving Files

The handset can receive files when the Infrared setting is *ON*.

- In Standby, receive a connection request from another infrared compatible device
- 2 Select YES⇒
 - To reject the reception of files, select NO.
 - When the handset receives a Phone Book entry, event, task or notepad, select YES to save it to your Phone Book, Event, Tasks or Notepad.

3 Select *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card*⇒ ●

Sending All Phone Book Entries/Calendar & Task Data

All the Phone Book entries in your handset, events on the Calendar or tasks can be sent to another infrared compatible handset. Enter the same authentication password on both the sending and receiving devices.

- From Infrared Window, select *Transfer* $All \Rightarrow \bullet$
- 2 Enter your Handset Code
- **3** Select *Phone Book* or *Cal./Tasks* **→**
 - When sending Phone Book entries, a confirmation window appears asking if you want to send images saved in Phone Book. Select Without Image to send the Phone Book entries without images.
 - When sending events/tasks, a confirmation window appears. Select Without Past to send events/tasks without including past events/tasks.
- 4 Enter the authentication password

Receiving All Phone Book Entries/Calendar & Task Data

All the Phone Book entries, events on the Calendar or tasks can be received from another infrared compatible handset. Enter the same authentication password on both the sending and receiving devices.

The handset can receive files when the Infrared setting is ON.

- In Standby, receive a connection request from another infrared compatible device
- 2 Enter your Handset Code⇒Enter the authentication password
- 3 Select Add ⇒
 - To overwrite all files: Select *Overwrite* → • YES → •
 - To cancel receiving the data:
 Select *Discard* → (•)

More Features



Functions for Infrared Communication (page 11-10)

11-3

PC Connection

About PC Connection

Use the USB cable to connect your handset to a PC to transfer files. You can also check the contents of the memory card inserted in the handset on your PC.

Getting Started

- Install the USB Host Driver on your PC before connecting the USB cable. For details on the installation procedure, refer to the USB Host Driver Installation Guide on the supplied CD-ROM
- When using the USB cable to connect your handset to a PC, be sure to directly insert the plug of the USB cable into the USB port of the PC.
- You cannot use USB functions other than the charge function during infrared communication.

Switching to Data Transfer Mode by Connecting the USB Cable

Open the handset in Standby and connect it to a PC using the USB cable

→ YES→ ●



- A confirmation window appears even while an S! Appli set as Screensaver is running.
- The handset will not switch to data transfer mode when you connect it to a PC in Standby using the USB cable if:
 - · Password Lock is set.
 - · The handset is closed.
 - · Memory card is not inserted.
 - · Confirmation (page 12-30) is set to **Do not Display**.

Switching to Data Transfer Mode from Main Menu

Switch the handset to data transfer mode from Main Menu, if it does not automatically switch to data transfer mode when connected by USB, or if you want to re-establish a connection after canceling data transfer mode.

- Connect the handset to a PC by USB connection
- 2 In Standby, press ⇒ Settings → ⇒

 Connectivity → → USB → → Data

 Transfer → •
- Offline Mode is set while in data transfer mode. If the handset cannot switch to Offline Mode because it is communicating with another device, a confirmation window appears.
- A warning window appears if the memory card is not properly formatted. Format the memory card and perform the procedure again.
- If the USB cable is unplugged while the transferring data window is displayed, a confirmation window appears and the connection is disrupted.

Transferring Data

- Switch your handset to data transfer mode
- Pollow the instructions on the PC

Canceling the Data Transfer Mode

Use the connected PC's function to remove an external device

More Features



Functions for PC Connection

(page 11-10)



Settings for PC Connection

(page 12-30)

- Set the Data Transfer Mode Confirmation Window
- Use the USB Cable for Charging

Memory Card Backup

About Memory Card Backup

Back up Phone Book entries, events and other information to a memory card, and restore as required.

Precautions

- Some data cannot be transferred to the memory card
- Do not use a PC or other device to view or change a backup file in a memory card. The file may be damaged.
- Copyrighted data may not be transferred to the memory card or restored to the handset, or may be deleted from the memory card/handset after the transfer.
- If the file name of data restored to the handset is more than 32 characters, the characters that exceed the limit are omitted when the file is transferred.
- The security settings on the handset may not be reflected in the transferred data.

About Backing Up Content Keys

- Since only a single content key backup file can be saved to a memory card, backing up another content key will overwrite the previously saved backup file. If you want to maintain the previously backed up content key, import the backup file from the memory card to the handset and then perform the backup operation again.
- The file whose content key has been moved to the memory card for backup will no longer be available on the handset.
- Importing a content key into the handset adds it to other content keys in the handset. It does not overwrite the current handset content keys.

Backing Up Data to a Memory Card

Press ● → Settings → ● → Backup



Backup Window

- 2 Select Transfer All ⇒ ⇒Backup ⇒ ●
- 3 Select the data to back up⇒●



- To select other data, repeat this step.
- To select or unselect all the data:
 Press → Mark All or Unmark All
 → ●

- your Handset Code
 - When transferring Phone Book entries, a confirmation window appears asking if you want to include images saved in Phone Book, Select No to transfer the Phone Book entries without images.
 - When transferring events on the Calendar or tasks, a confirmation window appears asking if you want to transfer past events/ tasks. Select Futures Only to transfer events/tasks without including past events/tasks.

Restoring Data from the Memory Card

- From Backup Window, select *Transfer* $All \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow Restore A \text{ or } Restore B \Rightarrow \bullet$
 - If There are no data. is displayed, select either **Restore** A or **Restore** B to restore the data

2 Select the data to restore → •



- To select other data, repeat this step.
- To select or unselect all the data: Press ¬→ Mark All or Unmark All **→**(•)
- 3 Press
 (Read)

 Enter your Handset Code
 - To restore Phone Book/Events/Tasks/ Messages/Bookmarks/Notepad: Select *Add* or *Overwrite* → (•) (twice) → Select data → •
 - If you select Add, you can add the data without deleting data stored on the handset.

More Features



Functions for Memory Card Backup (page 11-10)

S! Addressbook Back-up

About S! Addressbook Back-up

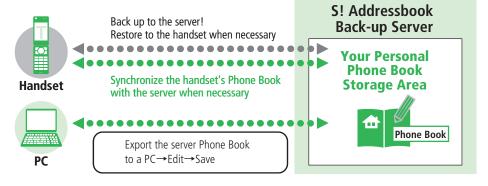
S! Addressbook Back-up is a service that allows you to back up the handset's Phone Book to a network server and synchronize the handset's Phone Book with the data on the server. It is useful for recovering information if your handset is lost or damaged.

For details on S! Addressbook Back-up, access the following website.

http://www.softbank.ip/SAB

Precautions

- The following Phone Book items cannot be synchronized.
 Be careful because the Phone Book settings on the handset are completely deleted when the data is read from the server.
 Ringtones/External Light settings/Pictures/Secrets
- The Phone Book on the server is deleted when you end your S! Addressbook Back-up contract.
- Be careful about timing and synchronization type setting when you back up or read data on the server.
- If you synchronize Phone Book data with the synchronization type of *Normal Sync*, *From Client*, or *Backup* after deleting all the Phone Book entries on your handset, the Phone Book on the server is deleted.
- If you synchronize Phone Book data with the synchronization type of *Normal Sync*, *From Server*, or *Restore* after deleting all the Phone Book entries on the server, the Phone Book on the handset is deleted.



Using S! Addressbook Back-up

Synchronizing Phone Book

Connect to the network server so that Phone Book data on the handset and the server can be complemented by each other.

- When synchronizing for the first time, the Normal Sync type is used regardless of the synchronization type setting.
- Press $\bullet \Rightarrow Phone \ Book \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow Addr.$ $Bkup \Rightarrow \bullet$



S! Addressbook Back-up Window

- 2 Select Start Sync → → Start → →
 Enter your Handset Code
 - Follow the onscreen instructions
- Upon starting synchronization, your handset is connected to the Internet. A communication fee is charged during Internet connection. Ending synchronization terminates the connection automatically.

Setting Synchronization Type

Select from the following types.

Normal Sync	Back up changes in the handset's Phone Book to the server and download new information in the server's Phone Book to the handset simultaneously.
From Client	Back up changes to the information in the handset's Phone Book.
From Server	Changes to the information in the server's Phone Book are reflected to the handset.
Backup	Delete the existing Phone Book data on the server and back up all Phone Book data in the handset to the server.
Restore	Delete the existing Phone Book data in the handset and reflect all Phone Book data on the server to the handset.

Trom S! Addressbook Back-up Window, select Sync Settings → Select the current Sync Type setting → ●



2 Select a synchronization type → ◆

(Save) → YES → ●

More Features



Functions for S! Addressbook Back-up
(▶ page 11-11)

Advanced Features

File Transfer/Backup

Functions for Infrared Communication

Send Information of My Details [Send My Details]

● Phone Book → ● My Details → ●

Wia Infrared → ●

Use Infrared for Dial-up Connections [Dial-up Connections]

In Standby, receive a connection request from another infrared compatible device

- The handset can use dial-up connections when the Infrared setting (page 11-2) is ON.
- The handset sends a message three times in three minutes to the same device if the receiving device does not respond.
- When accessing the Internet by connecting the handset to a PC or PDA (i.e. mobile data communication), a large amount of data is often transferred in a very short time resulting in high packet transmission fees. You are recommended to check the fees now and then during the mobile data communication.

Functions for PC Connection

Use the USB Cable for Dial-up Connections [Dial-up Connections]

You can connect the handset to a PC with the USB cable and access the Internet.

- The handset sends a message three times in three minutes to the same device if the receiving device does not respond.
- When accessing the Internet by connecting the handset to a PC or PDA (i.e. mobile data communication), a large amount of data is often transferred in a very short time resulting in high packet transmission fees. You are recommended to check the fees now and then during the mobile data communication.

Functions for Memory Card Backup

From Backup Window page 11-6

Back Up/Restore Setting Data

[Relocate]

■Backing Up Setting Data

Backup Window Relocate → ● Enter your
Handset Code → Backup → ● → Select a
setting data item → ● → ② → ● Enter
a backup file code → Re-enter the code for
confirmation → ② (twice) → ●

- To select more than one item, repeat selecting an item and pressing as many times as required.
- To select or unselect all the items, do the following.

While an item is selected, \bigvee \longrightarrow Mark All or $Unmark All \rightarrow \bigcirc$

 A backup file code is a four-digit number set at each backup and required when restoring the setting data to the handset. Write down your backup file codes and do not reveal them to others.

■Restoring Setting Data

Backup Window Relocate → ● ⇒ Enter your

Handset Code → Restore or From non-3G →

● ⇒ Select a setting data item ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter the backup file code ⇒ ② (twice) ⇒ ●

Restore Data on the SoftBank Handset (except 3G)

[Transfer from Non-3G]

Backup Window $Transfer\ All \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow From$ $non-3G \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow$ Select the data to transfer \Rightarrow

● → Fnter your Handset Code

- To select or unselect all the data, do the following.
 While data is selected, ¬¬→Mark All or Unmark All → (•)
- Some data created on the SoftBank handset (PDC) may not be loaded into the handset.

Delete Backup Files

[Delete Data]

Backup Window $Transfer All \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow Delete$ $Data \Rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$

■Deleting All the Files

 $All \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$ Enter your Handset Code

■ Deleting Phone Book/Events/Tasks/ Messages/Bookmarks/Notepad

Select Data → Select a type of data → Select a file → Fraction → Fraction → Select a type of data → Select a file → Fraction → Frac

- To select more than one file, repeat selecting a file and pressing as many times as required.
- To select or unselect all the files, do the following.
 While a file is selected, \(\nabla_{\text{\$\infty\$}}\rightarrow Mark All\) or

Unmark All ⇒ •

Functions for S! Addressbook Back-up

From S! Addressbook Back-up Window page 11-9

Synchronize Phone Book Automatically [Auto Sync]

SI. Addressbook Back-up Window Sync Settings →

Select the current Auto Sync setting →

ON → ○ → Enter your Handset Code → Daily,

Weekly or Monthly → ○ → Set the day of the

week/date/time → ○ → ○ → YES → ○

View S! Addressbook Back-up History
[Sync Log]

S! Addressbook Back-up Window **Sync Log** → • → Select a log → •

Display Settings · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	12-2
Incoming Event Settings · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	12-7
Sound Settings · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	12-9
Mail Settings · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
Internet Settings · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	12-16
Call Settings · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	12-19
Camera Settings · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
Media Player Settings · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
S! Appli Settings ······	
Reset ·····	12-27
Text Entry/Phone Book · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
File Transfer · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
Various Tools·····	
Communications · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	12-37

Display Settings

Menus, Incoming Image Display, etc.

Start Here $\bullet \Rightarrow Settings \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow Display \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow Main Screens \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow$

Set Menu Icons/Images

Preinstalled Icons/Images	Deco $ ext{ or } Deco ext{ } ext$
Saved Icons/Images (Data Folder)	Deco \longrightarrow or Deco \longrightarrow →Phone Memory \longrightarrow Gamendeco \longrightarrow Select a
	Gamendeco \rightarrow (twice) \rightarrow YES \rightarrow (\rightarrow
Keitaideco	Deco a or Deco a \rightarrow o \rightarrow Keitaideco \rightarrow o (twice) \rightarrow YES \rightarrow o

Set Incoming Call Image

Preinstalled Image	<i>In-Calls</i> → <i>Original</i> or <i>Ku-man</i> → <i>O</i> (twice)
Saved Image (Data Folder/Memory Card)	<i>In-Calls</i> → <i>Ooice Call or Video Call</i> → <i>Oone Memory or Memory Card</i>
	→ Select an image → ○ → ❖ to compose the image → ▷ → ●
Keitaideco	<i>In-Calls</i> → <i>Ooice Call</i> → <i>O</i> → <i>Keitaideco</i> → <i>O</i> (twice)

Messages → • → Receiving or DeliveryCheck → • → Original or Ku-man →

Set Incoming Message Image Preinstalled Image

		(twice)
Saved Image (Data Folder/	Memory Card)	► Messages \Rightarrow • \Rightarrow Receiving or DeliveryCheck \Rightarrow • \Rightarrow Phone Memory or Memory Card \Rightarrow • \Rightarrow Select an image \Rightarrow • \Rightarrow to compose the image \Rightarrow • \Rightarrow •
Keitaideco		<i>Messages</i> → • <i>Receiving</i> → • <i>Keitaideco</i> → • (twice)

[•] To set Keitaideco for incoming call/message image, Keitaideco must be set in advance (page 2-33).

- Start Here
 ◆ Settings ◆ ◆ Display ◆ ◆ Main Screens ◆ ◆

 Set the Download/Power-on/Power-off Screens
 ▶ Download, Power On or Power Off ◆ ◆ Original or Ku-man ◆ ◆ (twice)

 Set the Display Collectively
 ▶ □ Original or Ku-man ◆ ◆
- If you receive a call from a person whose picture is saved to Phone Book and *Picture* under *Caller Details* is set to *ON*, the picture is displayed regardless of the incoming image settings. However, if you receive a call from a Phone Book entry with Secret set to *ON* when Secret Mode is set to *Hide*, the incoming image is displayed.
- If a video file is set as a ringtone, the incoming image is not displayed.

Incoming Caller Details

Start Here $\bullet \Rightarrow Settings \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow Display \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow Caller Details \Rightarrow O$

Set Caller Photo to Appear \blacktriangleright Picture \blacktriangleright \bigcirc \rightarrow ON or OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc Set Caller Info to Appear in the External Display \blacktriangleright Ext. Display \rightarrow \bigcirc ON or OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc

- When Picture is set to ON, incoming image does not appear. However, if you receive a call from a Phone Book entry with Secret set to ON when Secret
 Mode is set to Hide, the caller photo is not displayed.
- If a video file is set as a ringtone, the caller photo is not displayed.

Font Settings

Start Here $\bullet \Rightarrow Settings \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow Display \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow Font Settings \Rightarrow Font Settings \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow Font Settings \Rightarrow Font Settings \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow Font Settings \Rightarrow Font Set$

Set the Font Size	► Font Size → • Select the window you want to set → • Select a font size → •
Set the Font Color	► Font Color → ● Select a font color pattern → ●
Set the Font Size Collectively	Font Size ◆ Select a font size ◆

Display Settings

Rac		ht C	attina.	
Dat	KIIU	III D	etting	

Start Here $\bigcirc \Rightarrow Settings \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow Display \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow Backlig$	$ht \rightarrow \bigcirc$
Set Power Saving	Power Saving → • → Power Saving → • → Select a time → •
Set Keypad Light	▶ Power Saving \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow Keypad Light \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow ON or OFF \Rightarrow \bigcirc
Set the Backlight	Displays → ● Lighting Time → ● Enter a lighting time (0 to 60 seconds) for the Display → ● Brightness → ● Bright or Dark → ●
Set Media Player Backlight (During Video Playback	Media Player ⇒ (•) ⇒Always ON, Always OFF or Same as Phone ⇒ (•)

External Light Settings

and Streaming)

Set the External Light for Notifications	\blacktriangleright Notification \Rightarrow ⊙ \Rightarrow Select a type of incoming event \Rightarrow ⊙ \Rightarrow Select a color or $OFF \Rightarrow$ ⊙
Set the External Light for Incoming Events	\blacktriangleright <i>Incoming</i> → ○ → Select a type of incoming event → ○ → Select a color or <i>OFF</i> → ○
Set the External Light for Incoming Messages	\blacktriangleright <i>Incoming</i> → \bullet → <i>Message</i> → \bullet → <i>Color</i> → \bullet → Select a color or <i>OFF</i> → \bullet
Set the External Light for Incoming Feeling Mai	► Incoming \rightarrow • \rightarrow Message \rightarrow • \rightarrow Feeling \rightarrow • \rightarrow ON or OFF \rightarrow •

• Priority is given to Phone Book settings when External Light is set for each Phone Book entry.

Twinkle Light Settings

 \bullet \Rightarrow Settings \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow Display \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow Twinkle Light \Rightarrow \bullet \triangleright

Set Twinkle Light

Set a Preinstalled/Original Pattern	Settings → ● Select a type of event → ● Preset or Original → ● Select a pattern → ●
Turn Off Twinkle Light	► Settings \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Select a type of event \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow $OFF \rightarrow$ \bigcirc
et Twinkle Light Collectively	▶ Settings → ⑤ → ⑥ → Preset, Original or OFF → ⑥
reate an Original Twinkle Light Pattern	Design Light → ● → Select the title field to create a new Twinkle Light pattern → ● • Rename → ● → Enter a title → ● → Create Color → ● → Select a color → ● → Pattern → ● → Select an illumination pattern → ●

- While selecting a color and illumination pattern, Twinkle Light flashes in the color and pattern currently being selected so that you can check the actual color and pattern.

Interface Language

Switch Language	● → Settings → ● → Phone Settings → ● → IBBR (Language) → ● → Select a language → ●
	• If you select <i>Automatic</i> , the handset selects the language set in the USIM Card
	automatically.

Display Settings

Active Window Settings

Configure settings for S! Quick News displayed in Shortcut Mode.

Start Here	\bigcirc \Rightarrow \triangleright Settings \Rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Display \Rightarrow \bigcirc
------------	--

Select S! Quick News Information to Display	► Unread/Read → • Unread Only or Show All → •

et Ticker Speed	Screen Speed ◆Select a speed ◆

Start Here	→Entertainment	→ • S! Quick Ne	ews→⊙→Settings→⊙▶
------------	----------------------------------	------------------------	-------------------

Set Updated Information Display	► Idle Screen → • → Idle Display → • → Show or Hide → •

Set Image Display for New Information $\blacktriangleright Idle\ Screen \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow Image\ Setting \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow Show\ Or\ Hide \Rightarrow \bigcirc$

Delete All Registered Contents from S! Quick News *Clear List* → ● ★Enter your Handset Code ★YES → ● and S! Loop Lists

Incoming Event Settings

Response Settings for Incoming Calls

Start Here $\bigcirc \Rightarrow Settings \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow Call \ Settings \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow Answer \ Type \Rightarrow \bigcirc \triangleright$

Answer Incoming Calls by Opening the Handset (Open to Talk)

▶ Open to Talk \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc

Set Any Key Answer

► Any Keys \rightarrow • ON or OFF \rightarrow •

• If Any Key Answer is set to *ON*, you can answer incoming voice/video calls and S! Circle Talk calls with any of $\boxed{}$. $\boxed{}$ to $\boxed{}$ and $\boxed{}$, $\boxed{}$ and $\boxed{}$, $\boxed{}$ (for video call).

Answering Machine Settings

Set the Answering Machine Response Time

◆Settings → ● → Call Settings → ● → Answer Phone → ● → Set Duration →
 ● → Enter the response time → ●

Reject Settings

● Settings → ● Call Settings → ● Reject Calls → ● Enter your Handset Code ▶

Reject Specific Incoming Calls

Reject Calls from Specified Phone Numbers

Specific #s → ● → ON/OFF → ● → ON → ●

Use Reject List (Save Numbers to Reject List)

> Specific #s→ ⑥ → Reject List → ⑥ → ⑥ → Phone Book → ⑥ → Select an entry → ⑥ → Select a phone number → ⑥ (twice)

Enter a Number

Select a Number from Call Log

 ▶ Specific #s → ● → Reject List → ● → ⑤ → Phone Number → ● → Enter a phone number → ● (twice)

 ▶ Specific #s → ● → Reject List → ● → ⑥ → Call Log → ● → Select a phone number

→ (twice)

• If Call Barring (page 3-18) is set for incoming calls, Call Barring takes priority.

Incoming Event Settings

Priorit	y Settings	
Start Here	Settings → Priority → ●	
Set Prio	ority	Select the function under operations → Select a type of incoming event → ● Pause or Continue → ●
Set	Priority While Media Player is Playing	▶ Media Player → • → Continue or Pause → •
Set	Priority While Running S! Appli	\triangleright S! Appli \Rightarrow • Select a type of incoming event \Rightarrow • Pause Apps or Continue Apps \Rightarrow •
Set	Priority During S! Circle Talk	<i>Circle Talk</i>

Sound Settings

Manner Mode

 \bullet > Settings \rightarrow \bullet > Sounds \rightarrow \bullet > Manner Mode \rightarrow \bullet \triangleright **Switch Mode** → (•) → Select a mode → (•) **Switch Manner Modes Description Original Mode → Original Mode Original Mode Original Mode Original Mode Original Mode Original Mode Customize Original Mode** to change → ● Set each item → 🗊 • For details on setting each item, see "Sound and Vibration".

Sound and Vibration

Start Here $\bullet \Rightarrow Settings \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow Sounds \Rightarrow \bullet$

Set the Ringtone

Set a Sound Preinstalled in the Handset as the Ringtone Set a File Saved in Data Folder/Memory Card	Melodies → ● Select a ringtone → ●	
Ringtone Volume	► <i>Incoming</i> → Select a type of incoming event → Pringtone Vol. → Adjust	

the volume → (•)

Set Ring Time	
Specify the Time by Direct Entry	<i>Incoming</i> → • → <i>Message</i> , <i>DeliveryCheck</i> , <i>Missed Call</i> or <i>Friend Status</i> → • → <i>Duration</i> → • → <i>Set Duration</i> → • → <i>Enter a ring time</i> (1 to 99 seconds) → •
Play the Specified File until the End	Incoming → ● → Message, Delivery Check, Missed Call or Friend Status → ● → Duration → ● → 1 Cycle → ●
Set Vibration	Incoming → ● Select a type of incoming event → ● Vibration → ● Select a pattern → ●
Set Vibration for Incoming Messages	\blacktriangleright Incoming → \bigcirc → Message → \bigcirc → Vibration → \bigcirc → Pattern → \bigcirc → Select a pattern → \bigcirc
Set Vibration for Incoming Feeling Mail	$ \hline $
Set Sound Volume	Sound Vol. → ● →Adjust the volume→ ●
Set Speaker Volume	► Speaker Vol. → • → Adjust the volume → •
Set Sound Effects	
Set the Original Tone Preinstalled in the Handset	 Sound Effects → ● Select an item → ● → Tone Type → ● → Original → ● Select Original 1 and Original 2 for Keypad Tone.
Set a Melody Preinstalled in the Handset	 Sound Effects → ● Select an item → ● → Tone Type → ● → Melodies → ● → Select a melody → ● You cannot set preinstalled melodies as Keypad Tone.
Set a File Saved in Data Folder/Memory Card	 Sound Effects → ○ → Select an item → ○ → Tone Type → ○ → Phone Memory or Memory Card → ○ → Select a file → ○ (twice) You cannot set files which include an image as sound effects. You cannot set files in Data Folder or memory card as Keypad Tone.
Set Sound Effects Volume	Sound Effects ◆Select an item ◆Tone Volume ◆Adjust the volume

Mail Settings

Messaging Settings

Add Recipients to Simple Input List	> Simple Input → ● → Select a list item with no entry → ● → Enter an address → ● ■ For details on how to enter addresses, see page 4-4.
Set Groups	> Category → ● → Select a group → ● → ► → Add → ● → Enter an address → ●
Edit a Group Name	\blacktriangleright <i>Category</i> → • → Select a group → \blacktriangledown → <i>Rename</i> → • → Enter a group name → •
Set Send Type (To/Cc/Bcc) for Each Address	► Category → • Select a group → • Select an address → \nearrow \rightarrow To/Cc/Bcc → • Select To, Cc or Bcc → • \rightarrow
Set a Signature	<i>Signature</i> → ③ → <i>Signature 1</i> or <i>Signature 2</i> → ⑤ → Enter a signature → ⑥
Cancel Signature Insertion	▶ Signature → ● → No Signature → ●
Edit Signature	Signature → ● ⇒ Signature 1 or Signature 2 ⇒ ¬ Edit → ● Edit the signature → ●
Set Default Mail Type	▶ Default Type \rightarrow • \rightarrow SMS or S! Mail \rightarrow •
Display/Hide Notification When Mail Type is Switched	Notify Type→ ● →Show or Hide → ●

Mail Settings

Outgoing Messages		
Start Here		
Set the Sending Confirmation Window	Confirmation → ® → Show or Hide → ®	
Set the Vibration When Sending is Confirmed	▶ Vibration \Rightarrow • • ON or OFF \Rightarrow •	
Check Whether Sent Messages were Delivered to Recipients	▶ DeliveryCheck \Rightarrow ① \Rightarrow Ask or Do not Ask \Rightarrow ①	
Set the Length of Time Sent Messages are Stored on Server Mail Box	<i>Expiry Time</i> → • <i>SMS</i> or <i>S! Mail</i> → • Select an expiry time → •	
Set Message Priority	<i>Priority</i> → Select the priority → ●	
Specify a Time Before Delivering Messages to Recipients	Delivery Time ◆ Select a delivery time ◆	
Save a Reply Address	► Reply to \rightarrow • \rightarrow ON \rightarrow • Enter an address \rightarrow •	
	• For details on how to enter addresses, see page 4-4.	
Display Settings		
Start Here $\implies \rightarrow Settings \implies \bigcirc \rightarrow Display \implies \bigcirc \triangleright$		
Set the Font Size	Font Size → Select a font size	
Set the Scroll Unit	> Scrolling → Select a scroll unit •	
Display/Hide Address and Subject When Sending/ Receiving Messages	<i>Show Addresses</i> → ● Enter your Handset Code → <i>Main Display</i> or <i>Ext. Display</i> → ● → Select the viewing mode → ●	

Incoming Messages

Set New Message Retrieve Mode	▶ Retrieve Mode → ● → Immediate, Phone # Only or Deferred → ●	
Set Automatic Display of Picture Files	► Auto-extract \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow Picture \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow Show or Hide \Rightarrow \bigcirc	
Set Automatic Playback of Sound Files	<i>Auto-extract</i> → Sound → O → Unmute or Mute → O	
Set Spam Filter	<i>Anti Spam</i> → ● Enter your Handset Code → <i>Sort Messages</i> → ● <i>Sort</i> or <i>Do not Sort</i> → ●	
Set a Folder for Spam Messages	<i>Anti Spam</i> → ● Enter your Handset Code → <i>Select Folder</i> → ● → Select a folder → ●	

3D Pictograms

3D Pictograms are a 3D animation display function compatible with words, pictographs and emoticons in the message text.

Start Here \Longrightarrow Settings \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow 3D Pict. Setting \Rightarrow \bigcirc

Set the Criteria for Displaying Received Messages with 3D Pictograms

► Auto Play \rightarrow () \rightarrow Select the criteria \rightarrow ()

Set the Font and Background Colors for 3D **Pictograms**

Colors → Select a color combination → (•)

- 3D Pictograms are unavailable in S! Mail notifications and SMS with no text.
- Background playback of a music file may be paused if you use 3D Pictograms.

:	200	•	
4	,	_	١

Message Box Settings	
Do Not Auto-delete Old Messages	
Switch Between Folder View and All Message View	S → Message Box → O → Display → O → Folder View → O → Folder View → Or All Messages → O
Switch Between Mixed View and Separate View	S → Message Box → O → Display → O → Received/Sent → O → Mixed View of Separate View → O

Message List Display Settings

Start Here $\implies Message Box \implies \bigcirc \implies Select a folder \implies \bigcirc \implies \bigcirc \implies Display \implies \bigcirc \implies$

Switch the Message List Display Mode Display Items → Subject or Addresses → ●

• When Subject is set for Display Items, the subjects appear in the Message List Window. When Addresses is set, the addresses of the other parties appear.

Message List Window Settings Start Here $\longrightarrow Message Box \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Select a folder \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$

Display wessages According to the Specified Criteria	✓ ✓ Filter ✓ ✓ ✓ Select tile criteria ✓ ✓
Create a New Phone Book Entry with a Phone Number/E-mail Address	► Select a message \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow Save Sender \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow Enter other items \Rightarrow \bigcirc
Add a Phone Number/E-mail Address to a Phone Book Entry	Select a message \Rightarrow Save Sender \Rightarrow Select a Phone Book entry ● \Rightarrow Select a Phone Book entry

Estamble A Coloret the evitories A

Switch Between Unread and Read

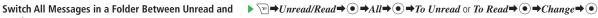
Read

Switch One Message Between Unread and Read	► Select a message \Rightarrow $\begin{picture}(20,0) \put(0,0){\line(0,0){100}} \put(0,0){\line(0,0){100}$
Switch Multiple Messages Between Unread and	▶ \rangle \rightarrow Unread/Read \rightarrow \rightarrow Select Multi \rightarrow \rightarrow To Unread of To Read \rightarrow \rightarr

Select messages → • → Ø

Read

Disular Massacca Assauding to the Consideral Criteria



• Only received messages can be switched between unread and read.

Internet Settings

Security Settings Start Here for Yahoo! Keitai ∇P (Press and hold) $\Rightarrow P$ \Rightarrow Settings $\Rightarrow P$ \Rightarrow Security $\Rightarrow P$ $\Rightarrow P$ Start Here for PC Site Browser Send/Block Manufacture Number Manufacture #⇒ • Send or Do not Send → • ► Send Referer \rightarrow (•) \rightarrow Send or Do not Send \rightarrow (•) **Configure Send Referer Setting Enable/Disable Cookies** ► Cookie → • Enable, Disable or Always Ask → • **Configure Script Settings** ► Script → (•) → Ask Once, Enable, Disable of Always Ask → (•) **Check Root Certificates Root Certif.** → (•) → Select a root certificate → (•) **Set Authentication** ► Authentica... → ● → Retain Info, Per Session or Do not Retain → ● Set SSL Communication ► Session Info. → • Show or Hide → •

Universal Settings for Yahoo! Keitai and PC Site Browser		
Start Here for Yahoo! Keitai		
Start Here for PC Site Browser (Press and hold)→@→Settings→ • ►		
Delete Cache Memory	<i>Memory Mgr.</i> → • ⇒Enter your Handset Code ⇒ <i>Clear Cache</i> → • → <i>YES</i> → •	
Delete All Cookies	<i>Memory Mgr.</i> → ● ► Enter your Handset Code → <i>Clear Cookie</i> → ● <i>YES</i> → ●	
Clear Authentication Info	<i>Memory Mgr.</i> → \bullet →Enter your Handset Code → <i>Clear Auth</i> → \bullet → <i>YES</i> → \bullet	
Return Browser Settings, Bookmarks, and Saved Pages to Default	<i>Browser Reset</i> → ● Enter your Handset Code → YES → ●	
Restore Settings and Stored Information to Default	<i>Reset Setting</i> → € nter your Handset Code → <i>YES</i> → €	
Yahoo! Keitai Settings		
Set the Storage Location for Downloaded Contents	\bigcirc (Press and hold) \Rightarrow Settings \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow Storage \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow Phone Memory or Memory Card \Rightarrow \bigcirc	
PC Site Browser Settings		
Do Not Display a Warning Window When Switching Browsers	\P (Press and hold) $\Rightarrow \P$ \Rightarrow Settings $\Rightarrow \P$ \Rightarrow Warning $\Rightarrow \P$ \Rightarrow PC Browser of Yahoo! Keitai $\Rightarrow \P$ \Rightarrow \Rightarrow Hide $\Rightarrow \P$	

Internet Settings

Web Page Settings	
Web Page → (page 5-3, 5-4)	
Change the Font Size	Web Page \Rightarrow \searrow \Rightarrow $Settings \Rightarrow \bigcirc$ \Rightarrow $Font Size \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow Select a size \Rightarrow \bigcirc$
Change the Scroll Unit	Web Page \Rightarrow \searrow \Rightarrow $Settings \Rightarrow \bigcirc$ \Rightarrow $Select a scroll unit \Rightarrow \bigcirc$
Change the Text Encoding Type	Web Page \Rightarrow \Rightarrow Select a text encoding type \Rightarrow \bullet
Adjust Sound Playback Volume	Web Page→¬Settings→•→Sound Volume→•→Adjust the volume→•
Do Not Download Images and Melodies from Web Pages	Web Page $\Rightarrow \ \ \Rightarrow Settings \Rightarrow \ \ $
Set Security Lock	
Set Security Lock for PC Sites	 \[\text{Press and hold} \rightarrow \rightarrow \rightarrow Bookmarks, Saved Pages, Enter URL or History \rightarrow \rightarrow Security Lock \rightarrow \rightarrow \rightarrow Enter your Handset Code \rightarrow Lock or Unlock \rightarrow \rig

Call Settings

International Call Settings

Start Here $\bullet \Rightarrow Settings \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow Call \ Settings \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow Call \ Services \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow Intl. \ Calls \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow Call \ Services \Rightarrow Call \ Services \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow Call \ Services \Rightarrow Call \$	
Change the International Code	<i>Intl. Code</i> → Enter your Handset Code → Enter a new code → ●
Add Country Codes to the Country Number List	\blacktriangleright CountryNumber → \bullet → \bullet → Add → \bullet → Enter a country name → \bullet → Enter a country code → \bullet

Call Cost Settings

Start Here $\bullet \Rightarrow Settings \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow Call \ Settings \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow Call \ Time \& Cost \Rightarrow \bullet $	
Set Cost Display Currency	► Cost Unit
Display Call Cost After Each Call	\triangleright Cost Display $\rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc $
Set Cost Limit	► Cost Limit \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Set Max Limit \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Enter PIN2 \rightarrow \bigcirc (twice) \rightarrow Enter the maximum cost limit \rightarrow \bigcirc

[•] You cannot make voice and video calls if the total cost reaches the specified maximum cost limit. If the limit is reached during a call, the call ends.

Video Call Settings

Start Here $\bigcirc \Rightarrow Settings \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow Call \ Settings \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow Video \ Call \Rightarrow \bigcirc \triangleright$

Set Alternative Picture

Set	Self-view Confirmation	\triangleright Self-view \Rightarrow • • • • ON or OFF \Rightarrow • •
	Set an Image Saved in Data Folder/Memory Card	► Alt. Picture \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow ON \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow Phone Memory or Memory Card \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow Select an image \Rightarrow \bigcirc (twice)
	Set the Image Preinstalled in the Handset	\blacktriangleright Alt. Picture \rightarrow (•) \rightarrow ON \rightarrow (•) \rightarrow Preset \rightarrow (•) (twice)

Set Self-view Confirmation

Self-view

On OFF

On OFF

Set Incoming Image Quality

 Select the image output format → ●

Add a Phone Number to Auto Answer List

Select a Phone Number from Phone Book	Answer → Answer List → $ Answer$ ⇒ Enter your Handset Code → Phone Book → $ Answer$ ⇒ Select an entry → $ Answer$ ⇒ Select a phone number → $ Answer$ (twice)
Enter a Phone Number Directly	Auto Answer → → Answer List → ○ → ☐ → Enter your Handset Code → Phone

Number \Rightarrow ⊕ Enter a phone number \Rightarrow ⊕ (twice)

Select a Phone Number from Call Log \Rightarrow Answer \Rightarrow ⇒ Answer List \Rightarrow ⊕ \Rightarrow Enter your Handset Code \Rightarrow Call Log

Set Audio Output $\blacktriangleright Loud Speaker \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow ON \text{ or } OFF \Rightarrow \bullet$

Set Hold Image

Set the Image Preinstalled in the Handset	► Hold Setting → • → Hold on Call or Hold Answer → • → Preset → • (twice)
Set an Image Saved in Data Folder/Memory Card	► Hold Setting → • → Hold on Call or Hold Answer → • → Phone Memory or
	<i>Memory Card</i> → ● Select an image → ● (twice)

Earphone-Microphone Settings

 \bullet \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow Call Settings \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow Earphone \rightarrow \bullet

Save a Phone Number for Earphone-Microphone Call

	Select a Phone Number from Phone Book	Earphone Call \rightarrow (a) \rightarrow (b) \rightarrow Phone Book \rightarrow (b) \rightarrow Select an entry \rightarrow (c) \rightarrow Select
		a phone number → (twice)
ı	Enter a Phone Number Directly	Earphone Call → \bigcirc → \bigcirc N → \bigcirc → Phone Number → \bigcirc Enter a phone number → \bigcirc (twice)
ot Λ	uto Answer	Auto Anguar An ON/OFF A ON A Sat Duration A Entor the

Set Auto Answer

Allows you to answer an incoming voice call without pressing the switch when the Earphone-Microphone is connected

- response time

 ●
- If you set Auto Answer and the Answering Machine, Answering Machine is given priority.
- If you set Auto Answer and Voice Mail, the one with shorter response time is given priority. If the response time is the same, Voice Mail is given priority.

External Device Settings

Set the Access Point Name (APN) to Perform Packet \bullet > Settings \rightarrow \bullet > Call Settings \rightarrow \bullet > External Device \rightarrow \bullet > Empty \rightarrow \bullet Transmission from a PC Enter the access point name (APN) \Rightarrow $YES \Rightarrow \bigcirc$

Camera Settings

Settings for Shooting Pictures/Videos

Viewfinder → (page 6-3)

viewillider	
Video Viewfinder → (page 6-5)	
Change Storage Location	Viewfinder/Video Viewfinder $\Rightarrow \text{$\searrow$} \Rightarrow Save \ Settings \Rightarrow \Rightarrow Storage \Rightarrow \Rightarrow Phone $ *Memory or *Memory Card $\Rightarrow \Rightarrow$ Select a folder $\Rightarrow \Rightarrow $
Set Image Quality	Viewfinder/Video Viewfinder \Rightarrow \nearrow \Rightarrow $Picture$ or $Movie$ \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow $Quality$ \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow Select the quality \Rightarrow \bigcirc
Set White Balance	Viewfinder/Video Viewfinder \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow $Picture$ or $Movie$ \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow $White Balance$ \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow Select an item \Rightarrow \bigcirc
Adjust Color Control	Viewfinder/Video Viewfinder \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow $Picture$ or $Movie$ \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow $Color\ Control$ \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow Select a color tone \Rightarrow \bigcirc
Set Picture/Video Effects	$ \textit{Viewfinder/Video Viewfinder} \Rightarrow \underbrace{\hspace{-3mm} \Rightarrow Picture}_{} \textit{or } \textit{Movie} \Rightarrow \underbrace{\hspace{-3mm} \bullet \bullet}_{} \Rightarrow \textit{Effects} \Rightarrow \underbrace{\hspace{-3mm} \bullet \bullet}_{} \Rightarrow \textit{Select an effect} \Rightarrow \hspace$
Adjust Flicker E.g. under fluorescent light, you can set the frequency (Automatic/50Hz/60Hz) to reduce flicker.	Viewfinder/Video Viewfinder $\Rightarrow \bigvee \Rightarrow Function \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow Flicker \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow Automatic, 50 Hz$ or $60 Hz \Rightarrow \bigcirc$
Set Shortcuts While Shooting Pictures/Videos	Viewfinder/Video Viewfinder $\Rightarrow \bigvee \Rightarrow Function \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow Key Shortcut \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow ON$ or $OFF \Rightarrow \bigcirc$
Set the File Name	
Set the Name to the Date and Time	Viewfinder/Video Viewfinder→ ¬Save Settings→ → File Name → → Date&Time → ●
Set a Name to Your Choice	Viewfinder/Video Viewfinder $\Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow Save \ Settings \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow File \ Name \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow Define \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow Enter a file name \Rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$

[•] Auto Save setting cannot be set in *Video* mode.

Settings for Taking Pictures

Viewfinder → (page 6-3)

Preview Window → (page 6-3)

Save Pictures Automatically	$Viewfinder \Rightarrow \bigvee \Rightarrow Save \ Settings \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow Auto \ Save \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow ON \Rightarrow \bigcirc$
Change the Shutter Sound	Viewfinder ⇒ $\begin{cases} \begin{cases} $
Add Date Stamp	Viewfinder \Rightarrow \nearrow \rightarrow $Picture$ \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow $Date Stamp$ \Rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Select a font colo \Rightarrow \bigcirc
Set Picture Guidelines	Viewfinder $\Rightarrow \forall \Rightarrow Function \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow Grid \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow ON \text{ or } OFF \Rightarrow \bullet$
Take a Picture for Phone Book Entry	
Create a New Phone Book Entry with a Picture	Preview Window → ¬To Phone Book → • Add New → • Create a Phone

• When Camera mode is set to *Digital*, or when it is set to *Mobile* with Picture Size set to *W112×H112*, you cannot enter a date stamp.

Camera Settings

Settings for Recording Videos

Video Viewfinder

→ (page 6-5)

Do Not Record Sound	Video Viewfinder $\Rightarrow Voice Record \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow OFF \Rightarrow \bigcirc$
Enlarge the Video Viewfinder	Video Viewfinder → ¬ScreenDisplay → •
Change the Start/End Sound	Video Viewfinder $\Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow Function \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow Start/End \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow Pattern 1 \text{ or } Pattern 2 \Rightarrow \bigcirc$
Set the Preview Display	Video Viewfinder $\Rightarrow \nabla x \Rightarrow Function \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow Preview \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow ON \text{ or } OFF \Rightarrow \bullet$
Set the Recorded Video as a Ringtone Pattern	
Create a New Phone Book Entry with a Ringtone Pattern	Preview Window \Rightarrow \nearrow Phone Book \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow Add New \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow Create a Phone Book entry
	 Cannot be set when Video mode is set to Video.
	● For details on saving a Phone Book entry, see page 2-18.
Add a Ringtone Pattern to a Phone Book Entry	Preview Window \Rightarrow To Phone Book \Rightarrow $\textcircled{\bullet}$ \Rightarrow Add \Rightarrow $\textcircled{\bullet}$ \Rightarrow Select a Phone Book ent \Rightarrow $\textcircled{\bullet}$ \Rightarrow $\textcircled{\bullet}$
	 If the selected Phone Book entry contains a ringtone pattern, select YES and press of to change the ringtone pattern.
	• Cannot be set when Video mode is set to <i>Video</i> .

12

[•] ScreenDisplay is not available when Video mode is set to Video.

Media Player Settings

Settings for Playing Music

Set the Wallpaper Displayed During Playback



S! Appli Settings

Settings for Operations While Running S! Appli

Start Here $\bullet \Rightarrow S! Appli \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow Settings \Rightarrow \bullet \blacktriangleright$

Change Sound Effect Volume	Volume ◆ ◆ Adjust the volume ◆
Set Backlight Illumination	 ▶ Backlight → ● → ON/OFF → ● → Always ON, Always OFF or Same as Phone → ●
Set Backlight Blinking	\blacktriangleright Backlight \Rightarrow • \Rightarrow Blink \Rightarrow • \Rightarrow ON or OFF \Rightarrow •
Set Vibration	Vibration \rightarrow ON or OFF \rightarrow O
Set Priority While Running S! Appli	► Calls&Alarms → • → Voice Call or Video Call → • Pause Apps or Continue Apps → •
Set Priority for When There is an Incoming Message	► Calls&Alarms → • → Message → • → Pause Apps or Continue Apps → •
Set Priority for When the Alarm Plays	► Calls&Alarms → • → Alarm → • → Pause Apps or Continue Apps → •

Other S! Appli Settings

Start Here $\bullet \Rightarrow S! Appli \Rightarrow \bullet \triangleright$

Set Confirmation Window for Making Calls or	Library → Select an S! Appli → Security → ● → Select a function → ● →
Network Connection	Blanket, Session, Oneshot or No→●
Update S! Appli Information on the Memory Card	\triangleright Card Sync \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow YES \Rightarrow \bigcirc
View S! Appli License Information	▶ Information → •
Confirm S! Appli Root Certificates	<i>Certification</i> → Select a certificate → ●



Resetting the Handset to Its Default State

Return All Settings to Their Defaults and Delete All Data Stored in the Handset	► Reset All → ● Enter your Handset Code → YES → ●
Reset Settings to Default	► Reset Setting → ● Enter your Handset Code → YES → ●
Delete All the Phone Book Entries, Data in Data Folder, and Messages	<i>Clear Memory</i> → Enter your Handset Code → YES → ●
Reset Confirmation Windows to Default	Confirmation → ● Enter your Handset Code → YES → ●

- Files or information saved in USIM Card and memory card are not restored after resetting the handset.
 Performing Reset All or Clear Memory deletes some preinstalled S! Appli and other contents, which cannot be restored to the same status as when the handset was purchased.

Text Entry/Phone Book

Text Entry Settings	
Start Here In a text entry window → ¬Customize → •	•
Change the Input Method	▶ Input Method⇒ • ⇒Standard, Beeper, T9 or Multi-tap → •
Do Not Predict Words from Previously Entered Text Strings	▶ $Prediction$ → $Predict\ Text$ → OFF → OFF
Do Not Predict Next Phrase from Previously Entered Phrases	ightharpoonup Phrase ightharpoonup 0 $ ightharpoonup Phrase ightharpoonup 0$ $ igh$
Set the Custom Window	▶ Custom Window → ● → Add to Window → ● (twice) → Enter symbols and pictographs → ●
Set Display of the Custom Window	► Custom Window → • → Display → • → Display or Do not Display → •
Reset the Prediction Dictionary/Conversion Dictionary	▶ Reset Learned → • → Prediction or Conversion → • → YES → •

• If Phone Book Lock is set to *Lock*, speed dial function is unavailable for making calls.

Settings for Phone Book Groups

⇒Enter a group name⇒⊙ ⇒Select a group icon⇒⊙ ⇒
ss 🕝 when a group is selected and select <i>To USIM</i> or <i>To Phone</i> to switch
ween the handset and the USIM Card.

File Transfer

Settings for PC Connection

Start Here $\bigcirc \Rightarrow Settings \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow Connectivity \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow USB \Rightarrow \bigcirc \triangleright$

Set the Data Transfer Mode Confirmation Window
▶ Confirmation → ● ⇒ Display or Do not Display → ●

Use the USB Cable for Charging \blacktriangleright Battery $\rightarrow \bigcirc ON \rightarrow \bigcirc$

- Once Confirmation has been set to **Do not Display**, the confirmation window for switching to data transfer mode does not appear when USB connection is made in Standby; but it is still possible to switch the handset to data transfer mode from Main Menu (page 11-4).
- Charging is not possible while the PC or the handset is turned off.
- Charging may not be possible depending on the connection settings of the PC.
- If the handset and PC are connected with the USB cable, either the PC battery or handset Battery is consumed depending on the Battery setting, regardless of whether they are communicating data.

 ON: PC battery is used.
- OFF: Handset battery is used.

Various Tools

Settings for Saving Events

Change Alarm Volume	
Change Vibration	
Set the Image to Display at the Set Time	
Display the Original Image at the Set Time	$ \land Alarm \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow ON \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow Image \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow Original \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow \text{ (twice)} \Rightarrow OK \Rightarrow \bullet $
Display an Image Saved in Data Folder/Memory Card at the Set Time	Alarm → ON → ON → $Image$ → ON →
Set the Stamp Icon	► Stamp $Icon$ → Select a stamp → \odot → \odot OK → \odot
Set a Category of the Event	\blacktriangleright Options → • → Category → • → Select a category → • → \bigcirc → \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc
Set a Phone Number/E-mail Address/URL	Phone Number, Address or URL → ● ⇒Enter a phone number, e-mail address, or URL → ● → ② → OK → ●
Set a Link to a Related Message/Web Page/Image	Messages, Saved Pages or Pictures → ⑤ → Select a message, web page, or image → ⑥ → ⑥ → OK → ⑥
Set a Location	$\blacktriangleright Location$ → ⊕ Enter a location → ⊕ → \bowtie → OK → \odot

Settings for Calendar

Start Here $\bigcirc \Rightarrow Calendar \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow \searrow \Rightarrow Settings \Rightarrow \bigcirc$

state tele C / Canoniania / C / C / Semings / C /	
Set the View Format When Opening Calendar	<i>First View</i> → Select a calendar view format → ●
Change the Font Color of Events	Font Color Select a font color
Lock Calendar	Calendar Lock ● Enter your Handset Code Lock •

• If you set Calendar Lock to *Lock*, the event title is not displayed when the event alarm is activated. And you cannot view the event details window unless you enter your Handset Code.

Settings for Saving Tasks

Start Here $\bigcirc \rightarrow Tools \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Tasks \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \triangle$ Start Here $\bigcirc \rightarrow Tools \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \triangle$ Start Here $\bigcirc \rightarrow Tools \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \triangle$ Start Here $\bigcirc \rightarrow$ S

Set the Image to Display at the Set Time

Set the Stamp Icon		► Stamp $Icon$ → Select a stamp → \bullet → \Box → OK → \bullet
١_	Memory Card at the Set Time	Select an image $\rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$ to compose the image $\rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc$ (twice) $\rightarrow OK \rightarrow \bigcirc$
	Displaying an Image Saved in Data Folder/	\blacktriangleright Alarm → • → ON → • → Image → • → Phone Memory or Memory Card → • →
	Display the Original Image at the Set Time	$ \land Alarm \Rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \Rightarrow ON \Rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \Rightarrow Image \Rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \Rightarrow Original \Rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} \Rightarrow \textcircled{o} \text{ (twice) } \Rightarrow OK \Rightarrow \textcircled{\bullet} $

Set Task Priority \triangleright Options \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Priority \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Select the priority \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Select the Status \triangleright Options \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Status \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Select the status \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Select the Status \rightarrow \rightarrow Status \rightarrow Select the Status \rightarrow Status \rightarrow Select the Status \rightarrow Status \rightarrow Select the Status \rightarrow Status \rightarrow Select the Status \rightarrow Status \rightarrow Select the Status \rightarrow Select the Status \rightarrow Status \rightarrow Status \rightarrow Status \rightarrow Sta

Settings for Tasks

Lock Tasks \bullet \rightarrow Tools \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow Tasks \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow Tasks Lock \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow Enter vour Handset Code**→***Lock***→**(•)

• If you set Tasks Lock to Lock, the title is not displayed when the task alarm is activated. And you cannot view the task details window unless you enter vour Handset Code.

Time Table Settings

Start Here \bullet \rightarrow Tools \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow Time Table \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow \searrow \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow \bullet

> Set Time → ● > Select a period → ● Enter a start time → ● > Enter an end time → Set Start/End Time of a Period ●● • Enter the time in accordance with the 24-hour system.

Reset Time Settings to Default \triangleright Reset Time $\Rightarrow \bullet$ \Rightarrow YES $\Rightarrow \bullet$

Ichi Navi Settings	
Start Here $\bigcirc \Rightarrow Settings \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow Location \Rightarrow \bigcirc \triangleright$	
Save a Map URL	<i>Map URL Settings</i> → ○ → Select an unregistered item → \(\bar{V}_{\omega}\) → <i>Edit URL</i> → ○ → Enter a URL → ○
Edit the Map URL Display Name	<i>Map URL Settings</i> → Select a map URL → ¬Rename → ● → Edit the display name → ●
Edit the Map URL	 Map URL Settings → ● Select a map URL → ▼ → Edit URL → ● → YES → ● → Edit the URL → ● • The preset map URL cannot be edited.
Delete a Map URL	 Map URL Settings → ● Select a map URL → ¬Delete → ● → YES → ● The preset map URL cannot be deleted.
Set the Map URL	<i>Map URL Settings</i> → Select the map URL you want to set → ●
Lock Positioning	<i>Positioning Lock</i> → Enter your Handset Code → <i>ON</i> → •
Set Location Information Send Setting	LocationProperty → ● → ♀ → Enter your Handset Code → Always Ask, Send on Do not Send → ●

Alarm Settings

● → Tools → ● → Alarms → ● → Select an alarm → ● → Enter basic items (page 8-11) → ● → Alarm Tone → ● ▶ Start Here **Volume** → (•) → Adjust the volume → (•) → ($\forall V$) (twice) → OK → (V) **Change Alarm Volume Change Vibration** \blacktriangleright Vibration \rightarrow (•) \rightarrow Select a pattern \rightarrow (•) \rightarrow (twice) \rightarrow OK \rightarrow (•) Set the Image to Display at the Set Time Display the Original Image at the Set Time \blacktriangleright Image → • → Original → • → \bigcirc (twice) → \bigcirc K → • Display an Image Saved in Data Folder/Memory ► Image \Rightarrow • Phone Memory or Memory Card \Rightarrow • Select an image \Rightarrow • \Rightarrow to compose the image $\Rightarrow \nabla P \Rightarrow O P \Rightarrow$ Card at the Set Time

World Clock Settings

 \bullet > Settings \Rightarrow \bullet > Phone Settings \Rightarrow \bullet > Clock \Rightarrow \bullet > World Clock \Rightarrow \bullet > Set the City by the GMT Time Difference → (twice) ► City 1 or City $2 \Rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc DST \ ON/OFF \Rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc \rightarrow ON \ \text{or} \ OFF \Rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$ Set Daylight Saving Time (DST)

S! Information Channel Settings

 \bullet \Rightarrow Entertainment \Rightarrow \bullet \Rightarrow Info Channel \Rightarrow \bullet

Do Not Display Weather Indicator Icons in Standby

Set Notification of Weather Forecast Updates Set whether or not to notify of weather forecast updates by the Information Prompt.

▶ Weather Icon \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow $View Setting <math>\Rightarrow$ \bigcirc \Rightarrow Display <math>Icon \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow Hide \Rightarrow \bigcirc

▶ Weather Icon \Rightarrow \bigcirc \Rightarrow $View Setting <math>\Rightarrow$ \bigcirc \Rightarrow $Information <math>\Rightarrow$ \bigcirc \Rightarrow Show or Hide**→**(•)

• When Display Icon is set to *Hide*. Information cannot be set.

Setting Ku-man for Standby (Japanese)

Setting 待受く一まん (Idle Screen) to ON displays Ku-man, a 3D animated character, in Standby, Ku-man communicates with you with the various outfits and gestures depending on the season, time of the day, and other conditions.

Set Ku-man to be Displayed in Standby

(Settings)→ (Idle Screen)→ (Idle S

- If 言語選択 (Language) is set to English or a language other than Japanese is set for Automatic, or S! Quick News is selected to display new information. Ku-man cannot be displayed in Standby.
- If Flash® is set for Wallpaper and is activated, Ku-man will not appear in Standby.

© Dora communications

Communications

Settings for S! Friend's Status

Edit Status Settings of My Status				
Set All Answer Statuses Collectively				
Save Members to Active Window	▶ \odot to select a group \Rightarrow \diamondsuit to select a member \Rightarrow \heartsuit \Rightarrow $Active Window \Rightarrow \odot (twice) \Rightarrow Not Registered \Rightarrow \odot$			
Ignore Saving Requests from People Not in Phone Book	► ¬Settings → • Request Reply → • Known Only → •			
Ignore All Saving Requests	► \[\rightarrow \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow \rightarrow Request Reply \rightarrow \rightarrow Do not Answer \rightarrow \infty			

Settings for S! Friend's Status/S! Circle Talk

Disable S! Friend's Status/S! Circle Talk	$\bullet \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow Security \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow IP Service \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow OFF \rightarrow \bullet$
---	--

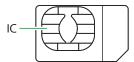
• Before configuring the IP Service setting, you need to retrieve the network connection information (page 1-10).

USIM Card · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	• • • • •	••••13-2
Handling the USIM Card · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		
USIM Codes (PIN/PIN2) · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		
Inserting and Removing the USIM Card · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		
Battery		13-4
Removing Battery · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		12 /
Attaching Battery		10 5
C-face Undetermined		13-5
Software Update		13-6
Updating Software		
Troubleshooting · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	• • • • •	••••13-7
Text Entry Keys·····		
Standard Mode · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		
Beeper Mode · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		
Simple Mode Function List · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	• • • • •	···13-11
Specifications · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	• • • • •	13-17
Main Specifications · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		13-17
Specifications by Function · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		13-18
Default Settings · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		13-23
Glossary·····		13-31
Index ·····		13-32
Alphabetic Order · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		
By User Action · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		
Warranty & After Sales Service ······		13-40
Warranty · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		
After Sales Service · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		
Customer Service·····	• • • • •	•••13-45

Handling the USIM Card

Universal Subscriber Identity Module (USIM) Card is an IC card containing customer and authentication information, including handset number, and limited storage for Phone Book entries and SMS messages. USIM must be inserted to use 822T or Network services (calling, messaging, Web, etc.). Turn handset off before inserting/removing USIM Card.

- Save Phone Book entries and SMS messages on USIM Card (pages 4-19, 12-29).
- Insert into compatible SoftBank handsets to access files.
- Do not insert the USIM Card into any other IC card device. SoftBank is not liable for any resulting damages.
- Keep the USIM Card IC chip clean.
- Use a dry, soft cloth to clean the USIM Card.
- Do not attach labels to the USIM Card. Doing so may damage your handset.
- For details on the USIM Card, refer to the instruction manual provided with the USIM Card



- USIM Cards are the property of SoftBank.
- USIM Cards will be reissued for a fee if lost or damaged.
- Return USIM Cards to SoftBank upon subscription termination.
- Returned USIM Cards are recycled.
- USIM Card specifications may change without prior notice. Preinstalled S! Appli may become unavailable if a different USIM Card is inserted.
- Back up USIM Card information. SoftBank is not liable for lost information.
- If your USIM Card or handset (with USIM Card inserted) is lost or stolen, suspend your service immediately. For details, contact your nearest SoftBank Shop or SoftBank General Information (page 13-45).

USIM Codes (PIN/PIN2)

For security, the USIM Card has two security codes: PIN and PIN2. Do not forget these codes and do not reveal them to others.

- PIN and PIN2 can be changed (page 10-7).
- The default setting is 9999 for both PIN and PIN2

PIN

This is a four to eight digit security code to prevent others from using your handset. When PIN Settings is set to *ON*, PIN is required each time the handset is turned on.

PIN2

This is a four to eight digit security code required for changing data stored on the USIM Card, such as resetting Call Time&Cost.

PIN Lock & PUK Codes

PIN Lock or PIN2 Lock is activated when PIN or PIN2 is incorrectly entered three times. PUK (Personal Unblocking Key) codes are required to cancel PIN Lock and PIN2 Lock. To obtain PUK and PUK2, contact SoftBank General Information (page 13-45).

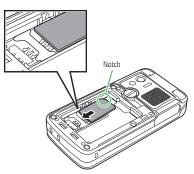
 If PUK or PUK2 is incorrectly entered ten consecutive times, the USIM Card is locked. USIM Card Lock cannot be canceled. Contact SoftBank General Information (page 13-45).

Inserting and Removing the USIM Card

Before inserting or removing the USIM Card, turn off the handset and remove the battery.

Inserting the USIM Card

With IC (page 13-2) facing down, slide USIM Card in the direction shown



2 Push USIM Card completely in until it stops

Removing the USIM Card

Slide out USIM Card



- Avoid touching or scratching the USIM Card's IC. Do not force the USIM Card into or out of the handset; damage may result.
- Take care not to lose the USIM Card after removing it from the handset.

Battery

- Before using your handset for the first time, charge the battery.
- 822T uses a lithium ion battery. Battery voltage decreases with operating time (see below).



- Extreme temperatures will reduce battery capacity and shorten the operating time. Do not use the battery in high temperatures. This may shorten battery life.
- When storing the battery separately, make sure you put it in a case, etc. and store it in a dry and cool place. This will avoid short-circuiting the battery terminal. It is recommended that you store it uncharged.
- Repeatedly charging and discharging a battery shortens the operating time. If the operating time becomes too short, purchase a new battery.
- When disposing of a used battery, insulate the terminal with tape or place the battery into a plastic bag and then take it to your nearest SoftBank Shop, a recycle shop or follow the local disposal regulations for environmental conservation.
- Be careful not to drop or apply excessive force to the battery.

Battery Drain

- The battery discharges little by little when stored for a long time even if it is not used. It self-discharges at a rate of 10 to 20% per month and about 50% per half a year.
- If the handset is used in a location with poor signal reception or left in Standby outside the service area, or if you use the Mobile Light or launch S! Appli, it will shorten the battery's operating time.

Battery Level

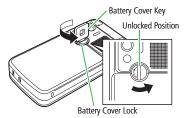
 The battery level on the display (page 1-4) changes with the operating time. Charge or replace it when the level is low. When the battery is about to run out (
 , a message appears and the battery alarm tone sounds. The handset shuts down after 30 seconds.

Removing Battery

 Do not remove battery while handset power is on.



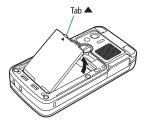
 Turn the lock until groove is vertical (see below). Avoid forcing the key to turn the lock, as it may damage the lock.







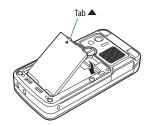
3 Lift Tab (above A) to remove battery



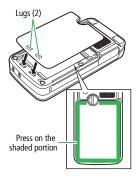
 Always remove the battery from the tab . Otherwise the terminals may be damaged.

Attaching Battery

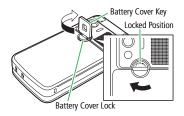
Align the battery terminal with the handset terminal and insert the battery



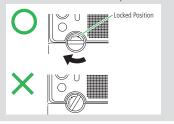
- 2 Align the battery cover lugs to the handset grooves and press down the cover tightly
 - Make sure that the lugs are securely engaged in the grooves.
 - Make sure that the cover is not partially open when attaching it.



- 3 Insert the supplied Battery Cover Key into the battery cover lock groove and pressing the cover, turn the lock in the arrow direction to lock
 - Turn the lock until it clicks to stop at the pictured position. Avoid forcing the key to turn the lock, as it may damage the lock.



- Always use the supplied Battery Cover Key for attaching and removing the battery cover.
- Do not use the handset with the battery cover lock left at a half-turned position.



^ 13

Software Update

Check if software on the handset needs to be updated, and update it through the network.

- No communication charge applies to update software.
- There are two ways to update software:
 Update now and Schedule update.
 Update now: Update software now.
 Schedule update: Set a date and time to update software so that software is updated automatically at the time you have specified.
- Software updates may take a long time.
- Update software when the battery is fully charged. Do not remove the battery while updating.
- Please update software in a place where the handset has a good reception, and do not change locations while updating.
- You cannot use other functions during updates.
 If a program is running, software update is not available.
- You can update software without deleting Phone Book entries, images and sounds saved in the handset. However, data may be lost or damaged if the handset is not in good condition (broken, damaged, wet, etc.). We recommend that you make backups of your important data.
 - If the software update fails, you may not be able to operate your handset. In this case, contact SoftBank General Information (page 13-45).

Updating Software

- - The check result is displayed. Follow the onscreen instructions.

After Software is Updated

When software is updated, the handset restarts automatically. After restarting, a confirmation window appears showing update information.

Using Schedule Update

A confirmation window for software update appears on the scheduled time. Press • or leave the handset for about ten seconds to start automatic software update.

- If you are using another function on the handset on the scheduled time, software is not updated.
- If the handset indicates that it is out of the service area on the scheduled time, software is not updated.

Troubleshooting

Problem	Possible Causes and Remedies
Cannot turn the power on.	Is the battery attached properly (page 13-5)?
Cannot turn the power on.	Is the battery charged (page 13-4)?
Displays <i>Please check connection</i> with your charger. and cannot charge the battery.	Is there dust on the connections and contacts of the AC Charger, External Device Port or battery? Clean the connections and contacts with a dry cotton swab, etc.
	Does the PIN Entry window appear? PIN Settings is set to <i>ON</i> , enter your PIN.
Cannot operate the handset normally after turning it on.	Does ¶ or <i>Password Lock</i> appear on the display? Password Lock is activated. Enter your Handset Code.
	Does <i>USIM not inserted. Power off the phone and insert USIM</i> . appear on the display? Turn the power off and make sure the USIM Card is inserted properly (page 13-3).
Cannot establish a connection for	Does appear on the display? Are you out of the service area or in a location where it is difficult to receive a signal? Move to a location where a signal can reach your handset and try again.
voice and video calls or use mail and Web functions.	Is your hand or another object covering the internal antenna part (page 1-3) of your handset?
und Web functions.	Does 🗽 or <i>Offline Mode</i> appear on the display? Cancel Offline Mode (page 1-12).
	Did you dial the whole phone number starting from the area code?
Cannot make voice and video calls.	Does <i>Network busy</i> . appear on the display? The line is busy. Wait a while and try again.
	Is Call Barring (page 3-18) set for outgoing calls?
	Is Reject Calls (page 12-7) set?
Cannot receive voice and video calls.	Is Call Forward (page 3-10) or Voice Mail (page 3-11) set to <i>All Calls</i> ?
	Is Call Barring (page 3-18) set for incoming calls?
Cannot send messages.	Is Call Barring (page 3-18) set for outgoing calls?

Troubleshooting

Problem Possible Causes and Remedies Cannot receive messages. Is Call Barring (page 3-18) set for incoming calls? Does appear on the display? Are you in a location where it is difficult to receive a signal? Calls are interrupted or Move to a location where a signal can reach your handset. disconnected. Is your hand or another object covering the internal antenna part (page 1-3) of your handset? The handset does not respond to Does \P or **Password Lock** appear on the display? Password Lock is activated. Enter your Handset Code. key presses.

Text Entry Keys

Standard Mode

Text Input Mode Key	Kanji (hiragana) (Double-byte)*	Single-byte katakana	Double-byte alphanumerics (upper case) Single-byte alphanumerics (upper case)	Double-byte alphanumerics (lower case) Single-byte alphanumerics (lower case)	Double-byte numbers Single-byte numbers
1 85	あいうえおぁぃぅぇぉ	アイウエオアイウエオ	.@1	.@1	1
≥ か ABC	かきくけこ	カキクケコ	ABC2	abc2	2
3 t	さしすせそ	サシスセソ	DEF3	def3	3
4 tc ghi	たちつてとっ	タチツテトッ	GHI4	ghi4	4
5 ts	なにぬねの	ナニヌネノ	JKL5	jkl5	5
E は MNO	はひふへほ	ハヒフへホ	MNO6	mno6	6
7 # PORS	まみむめも	ZELXE	PQRS7	pqrs7	7
B *	やゆよゃゅょ	ヤユヨャュョ	TUV8	tuv8	8
9.5	らりるれろ	ラリルレロ	WXYZ9	wxyz9	9
G □	わをんー、。	ワヲンー、。	~/?!0	~/?!0	0
★ **	Custom, Pictographs, Emoticons, * (dakuten), * (handakuten), —(cho-on), \$\(\text{(touten)}, \(\text{(kuten)} \)	Custom, * (dakuten), * (handakuten), —(cho-on), \ (touten), * (kuten)	Custom, Pictogr	aphs, Emoticons	Custom, Pictographs, Emoticons
# E24	Symbols, Alphanumerics, URL Toggle case	Symbols, Alphanumerics, URL Toggle case		anumerics, URL e case	Symbols, Alphanumerics, URL
•		Determin	e entered text/finish text entry		Finish text entry
•••	Move cursor, Insert line breaks with ②, Move up and down on the suggestion list with ③	Move cursor	Move cu	rsor, Insert line breaks with ②	
クリア/メモ	Delete entered characters				
200 A		_			

^{*} While assigning a reading in hiragana to an entry in the Word List (page 2-16), you can enter only double-byte hiragana and "—" (cho-on).

Beeper Mode

Switch the input method to Beeper mode. Enter two digits to make one character. The combinations are as follows:

		Press next									
		1 ණ . ී	2 か ABC	3 č	4 た GHI	5 # .k.	6 は	7 # PGRS	8 **	9,5 WXYZ	[d, D]
	1 5	あ	い	う	え	お	Α	В	С	D	Е
	2 pr ABC	か	き	<	け	2	F	G	Н	- 1	J
	3 č	さ	し	す	t	そ	K	L	М	N	0
_	4 た GHI	た	ち	つ	て	٢	Р	Q	R	S	Т
Press	5 ts	な	に	ぬ	ね	の	U	V	W	Χ	Υ
s first	6 ta ™0	は	ひ	131	^	ほ	Z	?	!	_	/
އ.	7 # PGRS	ま	み	む	め	も	¥	&			
	8 ∜	や	(ゆ)	よ	X	#			
	9.5	5	り	る	れ	ろ	1	2	3	4	5
	G .0	わ	を	h	0	۰	6	7	8	9	0

- indicates upper and lower cases are available. Press [# ***] to switch case immediately after character entry. Note, however, lower case is unavailable for single-byte katakana 7.
- When entering in 🔒 and 📵, all the characters will be single-byte.
- When entering in A, B, and A, hiragana will turn to katakana.
- When entering in and a, the characters will be in lower case.

Entering Characters in Beeper Mode

Example: Entering よしお

In a text entry window, press 🗷 📆 ⊃ౙౢౢ ౽ౙౢౢౢౢౢౢౢౢౢౢౢౢ ⊃ౖౢౢౢౢ ⊃ౖౢౢౢౢౢౢ ⊃ౖౢౢౢ ⊃ౙౢౢౢౢ

Simple Mode Function List

- The functions that can be used in Simple Mode are listed below.

 If you want to use functions that are not available in Simple Mode, access the full menu (page 2-27).

 The Simple Mode settings are reflected in the full menu.

Main Menu

Menu Item		Description	Page
Settings		Refer to the list of "Settings".	13-14
My Number		Same function as in full mode	3-3
	Alarms	Up to six alarms can be set.	8-11
	Notepad		8-9
Tools	Calculator	Same function as in full mode	8-13
	Dictionary		8-13
	Calendar	Monthly View only Saving, editing and deleting events cannot be done.	8-4
	Scan Data		8-18
	Kitchen Timer	Same function as in full mode	8-14
	Ku-man's Room		8-20
	Full Menu	Display all items of Tools menu in full mode.	_
Full Menu		Display the full menu without canceling Simple Mode.	2-27

Simple Mode Function List

Menu Item		Description	Page
	Phone Book		2-20
	Video Call		3-7
Phone Book	Add New	Same function as in full mode	2-18
Рпопе воок	Call Log		3-9
	Group		12-29
	Full Menu	Display all items of Phone Book menu in full mode.	_
Phone Book Search			2-20
Add to Phone Book			2-18
	Message Box	Same function as in full mode	4-8
	Create Msg.		4-4, 4-6
	Retrieve Msg.		4-8
Messaging	Drafts		4-10
	Templates		4-5
	Unsent Msg.		4-10
	Full Menu	Display all items of Messaging menu in full mode.	_
	Received/Sent		4-10
Message Box	Drafts		4-10
	Unsent Msg.	Same function as in full mode	4-10
Create Massacr	Create Msg.		4-4, 4-6
Create Message	Templates		4-5
Manner Mode		Set/cancel Manner Mode.	1-12

Menu Item		Description	Page
Alarms		Up to six alarms can be set.	8-11
	Mobile		6-3
Camera	Digital	Same function as in full mode	6-3
Camera	Video		6-5
	Full Menu	Display all items of Camera menu in full mode.	-
Data Folder		- Same function as in full mode	2-23
	Yahoo! Keitai		5-3
	Bookmarks		5-6
Yahoo! Keitai	Saved Pages		5-6
fanoo! Keitai	Enter URL		5-3
	Manufacture #		12-16
	Full Menu	Display all items of Yahoo! Keitai menu in full mode.	_

The combination of Main Menu items in $\hfill \square$ differs depending on the selected menu pattern.

Functions Available from Main Menu "Settings"

	Menu Item	Description	Page
	Wallpaper	Same function as in full mode	2-8
Idle Screen	Clock/Calendar	Mini Clock cannot be set.	2-9
	Ku-man	Same function as in full mode	12-36
	General	Only Large/Medium setting is possible.	12-3
Font Size	Messaging		12-3, 12-12
ront Size	Mobile Web	Same function as in full mode	12-3, 12-18
	Text Entry		2-29, 12-3
	Incoming	Can only be set for incoming voice/video calls and messages.	12-9
Sounds	Earpiece Vol.	Same function as in full mode	3-13
	Keypad Tone Vol.	Same function as in full mode	12-10
Manner Mode	ON/OFF	Set/cancel Manner Mode.	1-12
wanner wode	Switch Mode	Switch Manner Mode (Original mode cannot be edited).	12-9
	Voicemail ON		3-11
Diversions	Deactivate All	Come function as in full mode	3-12
Diverting	Listen VM	Same function as in full mode	3-12
	Answer Phone		3-5

	Menu Item	Description	Page
Security	Password Lock		10-3
	Reject Calls		12-7
	Anti Spam		12-13
	Change Password	Same function as in full mode	10-2
	Date&Time		1-11
Clock	12hour/24hour		1-11
	World Clock		8-12
Save 1-touch		A phone number saved to Phone Book can be assigned to either Softkey to make calls.	-
Full Menu		Display all items of Settings menu in full mode.	_
SimpleMode OF	F	Cancel Simple Mode.	2-7

Functions Available from Standby

Operation **Function** Description Page (•) Main Menu Refer to "Main Menu" in Simple Mode. 2-6 Press and hold (•) **Keypad Lock** Same function as in full mode 10-3 (d, 0) My Details Display "My Number" of Main Menu. (0) **Active Window** 2-9 Press and hold (*) Calendar 8-4 **Phone Book Search** 2-20 (•) (0) Same function as in full mode **Dialed Numbers** 3-9 Press and hold • Sent Message Log 4-13 (o) Received Calls 3-9 Press and hold 🕞 **Received Message Log** 4-13 Make a voice/video call or create a message to a Phone Y7 Use Phone Book Entries Assigned to Softkeys Book entry. Press and hold @ Simple Mode Off 2-7 Cancel Simple Mode. /F) **Shortcuts Menu** Adding functions to Shortcuts Menu is not possible. 2-5 Press and hold 🕝 **Information Prompt** 1-6 Playback of Recorded Messages on Answering クリフリメモ 3-5 Machine Same function as in full mode Press and hold PUTTINE Answering Machine On/Off 3-5 Press and hold # 87 Manner Mode On/Off 1-12 Press and hold * Activate the Function Set by Side Key setting 2-4

^{*} Operation available when the handset is closed

Specifications

Main Specifications

822T

Frequency Range	1920 to 2170 MHz	
Continuous Talk Time	Approx. 190 min. (Video call: Approx. 110 min.)	
Continuous Standby Time	Approx. 420 hrs	
Charging Time	Approx. 130 min.	
Dimensions When Closed (W×H×D)	Approx. 50×102×19 mm	
Maximum Output	0.25 W	
Weight	Approx. 127 g (with battery)	

- The values above were calculated with the battery attached.
- The continuous talk time refers to the average length of time a signal can be received normally when the handset is in a stationary state and a new fully charged battery is attached.
- The continuous standby time refers to the average length of time a signal can be received normally when the handset is closed, the handset is in a stationary state, a new fully charged battery is attached and there are no calls made/received or operations performed. If the handset is in a location outside the service area or where it is difficult to receive a signal (in a building, vehicle, bag, etc.), this time may be reduced to half or less. This time may also be affected by other factors such as the operating environment (battery state, temperature, etc.).

- The operating time of the battery was calculated when a stable signal was received constantly. However, this time may be reduced to half or less if the handset is used in a location where the signal is weak or the handset is left in Standby when it is outside the service area. Repeated charging and discharging a battery shortens the operating time. If the operating time becomes too short, purchase a new battery.
- If the Mobile Light is used frequently for taking pictures and recording videos or as a penlight, the continuous talk time and continuous standby time become shorter.
- When an S! Appli is activated, the continuous talk time and continuous standby time become significantly shorter.
- If the handset is used with the Display illuminated frequently (for Yahoo! Keitai use, etc.), the continuous talk time and continuous standby time become shorter
- Note that the LCD display may have defective pixels (dead or stuck pixels).

AC Charger (Sold Separately)

Input Voltage	100 to 240 V AC, 50/60 Hz	
Ambient Temperature Range for Charging	5 to 35℃	

Specifications by Function

Basic Operations

Text Entry

Word List	100 words (4 words with same reading), word: 12 characters, reading: 8 characters	
Clipboard	20 entries	

Phone Book

Number of Entries	1,000 entries	
Name	16 characters each for first and last names	
Reading	16 characters each for first and last names	
Phone Number	5 numbers, 32 digits	
E-mail Address	5 addresses, 128 characters	
Address	Postal code: 20 digits, country: 32 characters, state/city/street/additional info: 64 characters each	
Job Title	32 characters	
Company	32 characters	
URL	128 characters	
Note	256 characters	
Group	20 groups, group name: 16 characters	

Data Folder

Available Memory	Approx. 14 MB ^{*1} , 1,000 entries ^{*2}	
File Name	32 characters	

- *1 Memory capacity when all files that can be deleted are deleted. Data
- Folder shares its memory with S! Appli Library.

 *2 This number does not include S! Appli entries. Up to approximately 50 S! Appli items can be stored in Data Folder.

Others

Active Window	5 members on the Members List	
Shortcuts Menu	40 entries (7 preset)	

Call

Dialed, Received		20 entries each	
Answering Machine		5 messages, 30 seconds per message	
Voice Memo		60 seconds per memo	
Number Memo		5 numbers, 32 digits	
International Call Service Country Number List		20 countries (17 preset)	
Send Touch Tones		32 digits	

Messaging

Available Memory	Received	Approx. 3.75 MB, 1,500 messages	
	Sent, Unsent	Approx. 0.75 MB, 300 messages	
	Drafts	Approx. 700 KB, 60 messages	
Address		To/Cc/Bcc: total 20 entries, phone number: 24 digits, e-mail address: 254 characters	
S! Mail Text		15,000 double-byte characters/ 30,720 single-byte characters	
Attachments		Approx. 300 KB (including Address, Subject, Text)	
SMS Text		70 double-byte characters/70 single-byte katakana/160 single-byte alphanumerics	
Message Box	K	20 folders each for Received and Sent (General folder, Folder 1 to Folder 18, Ku-man folder)	
3D Pictogran	ns	150 characters	

Internet

Data Transfer Speed	Maximum 384 kbps receiving/ maximum 64 kbps sending	
Bookmarks	50 entries	
History (URL)	10 entries	

Camera/Picture Editing

Effective Pixels		1.96 million pixels	
File Format		Still pictures: JPEG, videos: MPEG-4/ H.263	
Picture	File Format	JPEG (1.6 MB or less), PNG (364 KB or less)	
Editing Picture Size		W16×H16 to W240×H320	

Camera Modes

Mode	Picture Size	Max. Zoom	
	W240×H320	Approx. 4.9×	
	W144×H176	Approx. 8.3×	
Mobile	W120×H160	Approx. 9.6×	
	W112×H112	Approx. 10.5×	
	W96×H128	Approx. 12×	
	W1600×H1200	— (Zoom is unavailable.)	
Digital	W1280×H960 Approx. 1.3×		
	W640×H480	Approx. 2.5×	

Video Modes

Mode	Size	Max. Zoom	Max. Recording Time
Video	W320×H240	Approx. 2.4×	Approx. 20 min.
Video Mail	W176×H144	Approx. 2.4×	Approx. 30 sec. (Quality: Fine) Approx. 50 sec. (Quality: Normal) Approx. 60 sec. (Quality: Economy)
Short Video	W128×H96	Approx. 3.9×	Approx. 5 sec.

Media Player

Playlist	10 each for the handset and the memory card, 50 songs per playlist
My Library	50 songs
Recent	20 entries

Playable Data

- Even under the following conditions, some files may not be playable.
 Although files with bit rates other than those listed below may be playable, their operation is not guaranteed.

	File Format	Bit Rate	Sampling Frequency
	AMR	4.75 to 12.2 kbps	8 kHz
822T Handset	MPEG-4 AAC-LC	16 to 128 kbps	16 to 48 kHz
	HE-AAC	32 to 64 kbps	32 to 48 kHz

S! Appli

^{*} S! Appli Library shares its memory with Data Folder.

Tools

Notepad	20 notepads, 256 characters per notepad	
Calendar	400 events (100 events per day), from January 2, 2000 to December 30, 2015	
Tasks	100 entries, from January 2, 2000 to December 30, 2015	
Time Table	8 periods per day, Monday to Saturday	
Dictionary	Japanese dictionary with 40,000 words, English- Japanese dictionary with 40,000 words, Japanese- English dictionary with 36,000 words*	
Voice Recorder	90 minutes per recording	
World Clock	2 cities, city name:13 characters	
S! Information Channel	7 History entries, 3 MB	
Electronic Books	BookSurfing®: CCF (.CCF)	
Barcode Reader	QR code data: 10 entries	

^{*} The dictionary data is included on the supplied CD-ROM.

Communication Services

S! Friend's Status

S! Friend's Status Members List	30 entries, 10 people per group
------------------------------------	---------------------------------

S! Circle Talk

Participants	11 people including yourself
Talk Time	30 seconds each time
S! Circle Talk Members List	50 entries, 10 people per group

Security

Biometrics	3 users, 5 face images per user

Specifications

File Transfer/Backup

Infrared

Communication System	IrMC1.1
Transmission Range	Approx. 20 cm

Melody List

The preinstalled (fixed) melodies are shown below.

• The fixed melodies cannot be set as Keypad Tone under the Sound Effects setting.

Title	Composer
O Mio Babbino Caro	PUCCINI GIACOMO
Habanera	BIZET GEORGES
Jupiter	HOLST GUSTAV
Arabesque No. 1	DEBUSSY CLAUDE ACHILL
Turandot	PUCCINI GIACOMO
Someday My Prince Will Come	CHURCHILL FRANK E
Entertainer	JOPLIN SCOTT
Aloha Oe	Hawaiian ballad
Old Phone	Produced by Toshiba
Flash News	Produced by Toshiba
Electronic Sound 1	Produced by Toshiba
Electronic Sound 2	Produced by Toshiba
Electronic Sound 3	Produced by Toshiba
Electronic Sound 4	Produced by Toshiba
Voice 1	Produced by Toshiba
Voice 2	Produced by Toshiba
Voice 3	Produced by Toshiba
Voice 4	Produced by Toshiba
Alarm Clock	Produced by Toshiba
Pigeon	Produced by Toshiba

Default Settings

Messaging

Function	Default Setting	
Message Box	Folder View: Folder View, Received/Sent: Separate View, Display Items: Addresses, Sort Setting: None, Security Lock: Unlock, Auto-delete (Received: Set, Sent: Set)	
Display	Font Size: Medium-Small, Scrolling: Line, Show Address: Show All (Main Display)/Show All (Ext. Display)	
Creating	Signature: No Signature, Default Type: SMS, Notify Type: Show	
Sending	Confirmation: Show, Vibration: ON, DeliveryCheck: Do not Ask, Expiry Time (SMS: Maximum, S! Mail: Maximum), Priority: Normal, Delivery Time: Immediate, Reply to: OFF	
Receiving	Retrieve Mode: Immediate, Auto-extract (Picture: Show, Sound: Mute), Anti Spam (Sort Messages: Do not Sort, Select Folder: Folder 18)	
3D Pict. Setting	Auto Play: OFF, Colors: Color1	

Yahoo! Keitai

Function	Default Setting	
	Font Size: Medium-Small (Yahoo! Keitai)/Extra-Small (PC Browser), Scrolling: 1 line, Downloads (Images: Download, Sounds: Download), Warning (PC Browser: Show, Yahoo! Keitai: Show)	
Settings	Security	Manufacture #: Do not Send, Send Referer: Send, Cookie: Enable, Script: Ask Once (Yahoo! Keitai)/Enable (PC Browser), Authentica: Per Session, Session Info.: Show
	Storage: Phone Memory	

Entertainment

Function	Default Setting	
S! Quick News	Auto Update (Flash News: Manual, News: Manual, S! Loop: Manual), Idle Screen (Idle Display: Show, Image Setting: Show)	
Weather Icon	Display Icon: Show, Information: Show	
Ku-man's Room	Ku-man Data: Thumbnail View	

Camera

Function		Default Setting
Camera	Camera Mode: Mobile, Picture Size: (Mobile: W240 × H320, Digital: W1600 × H1200), Brush Up (Mobile: ON, Digital: OFF), Self-view: OFF, Multi Shots: OFF, Add Frame: OFF, Icons Display: Show, Storage: Phone Memory, File Name: Date&Time, Auto Save: OFF, Quality: Fine, Effects: OFF, Date Stamp: OFF, Date Stamp Color: White w/Black, Mobile Light: OFF, White Balance: Auto, Color Control: Neutral, Delay Timer: OFF, Grid: OFF, Flicker: Automatic, Shutter Sound: Pattern 1, Key Shortcut: ON, Exposure: ±0.0EV	
	Screen[Voice R	Mode: Video Mail, Self-view: OFF, Display: Normal screen, Icons Display: Show, ecord: ON, Storage: Phone Memory, File Date&Time
Video	Quality	Video: Normal, Video Mail: Normal, Short Video: Economy (Fixed)
	Effects: OFF, Mobile Light: OFF, White Balance: Auto, Color Control: Neutral, Delay Timer: OFF, Encode: MPEG4, Flicker: Automatic, Start/End: Pattern 1, Key Shortcut: ON, Preview: ON, Exposure: ±0.0EV	
Scan Data	Exposure: ±0.0EV	

S! Appli

Function	Default Setting		
Settings	Screensaver: OFF, Start Time: 3 sec, Calls&Alarms (Voice Call: Pause Apps, Video Call: Pause Apps, Message: Continue Apps, Alarm: Pause Apps), Volume: Level 3, Backlight (ON/OFF: Same as Phone, Blink: ON), Vibration: ON		

Tools

Function		Default Setting		
Alarms	Tone: Pattern 1, Volume: Level 3, Vibration: OFF, Duration: 60 sec, Image: Original, Repeat: Once, Snooze: OFF			
Calculator	Set Tax Rate: 5%			
	Create Event	Set Alarm: OFF, Show/Hide: Show, Repeat for: Do not Repeat, Category: No Category		
	Set Holiday (Sunday: Red, Monday to Friday: Black, Saturday: Blue)			
Calendar	Reminder	Reminder: OFF, Schedule for: Today, Tone: Pattern 1, Volume: Level 3, Vibration: OFF, Duration: 60 sec, Repeat: Once		
	Calendar Lock: Unlock, First View: Monthly, Font Color: White w/Black			
	New Task	Set Alarm: OFF, Show/Hide: Show, Priority: Normal, Status: Not Completed		
	Change View: All View, Sort by: Deadline			
Tasks	Reminder	Reminder: OFF, Schedule for: Today, Tone: Pattern 1, Volume: Level 3, Vibration: OFF, Duration: 60 sec, Repeat: Once		
	Tasks Lock: Ur	lock		

Function	Default Setting	
Time Table	BG Color: OFF, Font Color: White w/Black	
Kitchen Timer	10 sec	
Voice Recorder	Select Storage: Phone Memory	

Data Folder

Function	Default Setting		
	Change View (View Type: Thumbnail 3×3, Sort by: From Latest), Security Lock: OFF		

Media Player

Function	Default Setting		
Audio	Sort by: (All Music: Title: A to Z, Artist: Title: A to Z, Album: Track No., Folder: Title: A to Z), Player Image: Original, Play Mode: All, Surround: OFF, Equalizer: Flat, Voice Cancel: OFF		
Videos	Display Link: ON		

Communications

Function	Default Setting		
Friend Status	My Status: Offline, Request Reply: Always Answer, Answer Status: (Calls: Answer OK, Mail: Reply OK, S! Circle Talk: Join OK), Status Setting: ごきげん (Good mood)		
Circle Talk	Loud Speaker: ON		

Phone Book

Function	Default Setting		
Phone Book	Search Mode: List View		
Options	ExternalLight: Same as Phone, Ringtone Vol.: Same as Phone, Ringtone: Same as Phone, Vibration: Same as Phone, Duration: Same as Phone, MessageFolder: None, Secret: OFF, Ext. Display: Same as Phone		
Options (Group)	ExternalLight: Same as Phone, Ringtone Vol.: Same as Phone, Ringtone: Same as Phone, Vibration: Same as Phone, Duration: Same as Phone, MessageFolder: None		
Addr. Bkup	Auto Sync: OFF, Sync Type: Normal Sync		
Settings	Select Storage: Phone Memory, Phone Book Lock: Unlock		

Settings

Sounds

Function		Default Setting		
	Incoming	Ringtone: Pattern 1, Ringtone Vol.: Level 3, Vibration (Pattern): OFF, Feeling Settings: ON, Duration: 5 sec		
Normal Mode		Sound Vol.: Level 3, Earpiece Vol.: Level 5, Speaker Vol.: Level 5, Battery: ON (Fixed)		
	Sound Effects	Tone Type: Original (Keypad Tone: Original 1), Tone Volume: Level 1		
Manner Mode: Unset, Switch Mode: Silent				
Manner Mode Alai	Silent	Ringtone Vol.: Silent, Vibration: Pattern 1, Feeling Settings: Same as Normal Mode, Sound Effects: OFF, Battery: OFF, Answering Machine: Same as Normal Mode		
	Alarms	Ringtone Vol. (Except alarm volume): Silent, Vibration: Pattern 1, Alarms (Alarms: Same as Normal Mode, Alarm Volume: Same as Normal Mode, Vibration: Same as Normal Mode, Feeling Settings: Same as Normal Mode, Sound Effects: OFF, Battery: OFF, Answering Machine: Same as Normal Mode		
	Original 1 to 3	Ringtone Vol.: Silent, Vibration: Pattern 1, Feeling Settings: ON, Effects: OFF, Battery: OFF, Ans. Phone (Answering Machine): ON		

Display/Idle Screen (Ku-man)

Function		Default Setting
Idle Screen	Wallpaper: Preset (Picture), Others: 1-line Digit, Ext. Display: Icon+Clock	
Main Screens	Deco (Icons): Original, Deco (Windows): Original, In-Calls: Original, Messages: Original, Download: Original, Power On: Original, Power Off: Original	
Caller Details	Picture: ON, Ext. Display: ON	
Font Settings	Font Size (General: Medium, Messaging: Medium-Small, Mobile Web: Medium-Small, PC Browser: Extra-Small, Text Entry: Medium-Small), Font Color: Pattern 1	
Backlight	Power Saving: 1 min, Keypad Light: ON, Displays (Lighting Time: 15 sec, Brightness: Bright), Media Player: Always ON	
External Light	Notification	Missed Call: Red, Messages: Green, DeliveryCheck: Blue, Missed Call (Voice Mail service): Purple, Missed CT: Aqua, Friend Status: Lime Yellow
	Incoming	Voice Call: Red, Video Call: Green, Message (Color: Blue, Feeling: ON), DeliveryCheck: Purple, Missed Call (Voice Mail service): Lime Yellow, Circle Talk: Aqua, Friend Status: Lime Yellow

Function	Default Setting	
Twinkle Light	Settings	Voice Call: Rhythmic C, Video Call: Rhythmic C, Message: Speedy C, Delivery: Speedy C, Opening: Rhythmic C, Closing: Rhythmic C, In Call: Gentle C, Side Key: Speedy Mix
	Design Light	Rename: Original 1 to 8, Create Color: Green 15, Red 0, Pattern: Teardrop
Idle Screen (Ku-man)	OFF	

Default Settings

Phone Settings

Function	Default Setting		
Clock	12hour/24hour: 24 hour, World Clock (City 1: Tokyo, City 2: Tokyo, Set as Main City: City 1, DST ON/OFF: OFF)		
Sub Menu View	Show		
言語選択 (Language)	日本語 (Japanese)		
Navigation Keys	③: Active Window, ②: Phone Book, ⊙: Dialed Numbers, ⊙: Received Calls		
Side Key	Twinkle Light		

Security

Function	Default Setting
Password Lock	Phone Closed: OFF, Power Saving: OFF, Power Off: OFF
Function Lock	Phone Book: Unlock, Calendar: Unlock, Tasks: Unlock, Call Log: Unlock, Message Log: Unlock
Biometrics	ON/OFF: OFF
Secret Mode	Hide
Anti Spam	Sort Messages: Do not Sort, Select Folder: Folder 18
Change Password	9999
IP Service	ON
Restricted Mode	Web: OFF

Call Settings

Function	Default Setting	
	Intl. Code: 0046010	
Intl. Calls	CountryNumber	Japan (81), UK (44), Italy (39), Switzerland (41), Spain (34), Germany (49), Portugal (351), Netherlands (31), France (33), Monaco (377), USA (1), Sweden (46), Australia (61), China (86), Hong Kong (852), Taiwan (886), South Korea (82)
Answer Phone	Setting: OFF, Set Duration: 18 sec	
Earphone	Auto Answer (ON/OFF: OFF, Set Duration: 10 sec), Earphone Call: OFF	
Answer Type	Open to Talk: OFF, Any Keys: OFF	
Video Call	Alt. Picture: OFF, Image Quality: Standard, Hold Setting (Hold on Call: Preset, Hold Answer: Preset), Mute: OFF, Loud Speaker: ON, Auto Answer: OFF, Self-view: ON	
Reject Calls	Specific #s: OFF, Unknown: OFF, Withheld: OFF, Payphone: OFF, Unavailable: OFF	
Offline Mode	OFF	
Show My Number	OFF	

Connectivity

Function	Default Setting	
Infrared	ON/OFF: OFF	
USB	Confirmation: Display, Battery: ON	

Priority

Function	Default Setting
Mid-operation	Message: Pause, DeliveryCheck: Continue
Video	Message: Pause, DeliveryCheck: Continue
Media Player	Pause
Voice Recorder	Message: Pause, DeliveryCheck: Continue
S! Appli	Voice Call: Pause Apps, Video Call: Pause Apps, Message: Continue Apps, Alarm: Pause Apps
Circle Talk	Continue

Default Settings

Text Entry

Function	Default Setting
Custom Window	Display: Display
Input Method	Standard
Font Size	Medium-Small
Prediction	Predict Text: ON, Phrase: ON

Active Window

Function	Default Setting
Templates	News
Auto Update	Flash News: Manual, News: Manual, S! Loop: Manual
Unread/Read	Show All
Screen Speed	Neutral

Glossary

Terminology	Description
3G	A third generation (3G) mobile communication system.
USIM Card	Use the handset with this card inserted. The card stores subscriber information such as your phone number and handset data. You can also save Phone Book entries and other data to the card. When you replace your handset, use of the same USIM Card in the new handset enables you to continue using the data stored on the card.
USIM PIN	A number required for using the USIM Card with your handset. This number allows you to prevent others from using your handset in the event that your handset is lost or stolen.
S! Mail	A service that allows long text messages with picture, video and melody attachments to be exchanged.
SMS	A service that allows short text messages to be exchanged between handsets.
SSL	A communication method for transmitting data in an encrypted form over the Internet. It enables data such as information related to privacy and credit card numbers to be sent and received safely and protects against dangers on the Internet such as eavesdropping, tampering and spoofing. SSL communication uses server certificates.
Server Certificate	A digital certificate for identifying that a site on a server is trustworthy. The server certificate includes information necessary for SSL communication (encrypted communication), server information and a digital signature of a Certificate Authority to verify that the server is authentic.

Terminology	Description
Cache	The location in the handset for temporarily storing the data of displayed Web pages, etc.
S! Appli	Applications including games and 3D images that can be downloaded from the Web pages of S! Appli providers. Some applications connect to the network to obtain information in real time and some applications can be activated as wallpaper.

Alphabetic Order

Numeric
12hour/24hour
Α
AC Charger · · · · · 1-8, 13-17
Account Name · · · · · · · · 4-3
Active Window · · · · · · 2-9
Change Icon·····2-28
Check Member Status · · · · · · 2-28
Contact Members · · · · · · · 2-10
Edit Members List · · · · · · · 2-28
My Status Display · · · · · · 2-28
Save People to Members List · · · · · · · 2-9
Templates 2-28
Add Address · · · · · 4-13
Add Frame (Camera) · · · · · · · · · 6-7
Add Frame (Edit Picture) · · · · · 6-11
Add Stamp (Edit Picture) · · · · · 6-11
Add Text (Edit Picture) · · · · · · 6-11
Address Library · · · · · 2-14
Alarms · · · · · · 8-11, 8-24
Alarm Tone·····12-35
Alphanumerics · · · · · 2-13
Alternative Picture · · · · · · 3-16, 12-20
Animation2-8
Answer Type 12-7

Answering Machine · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
Delete Recorded Messages · · · · · · · · 3-14
Response Time · · · · · · 12-
Anti Spam 12-13
Any Key Answer · · · · · 12-
Arrange · · · · · 4-5, 4-1!
Attachments · · · · · · · · · 4-
Save 4-19
Audio Output Setting (Video Call) · · · 12-20
Audio Output Switching (During Call)
S! Circle Talk · · · · · · 9-8
Video Call · · · · · · · 3-10
Voice Call (Handsfree Call) · · · · · · · 3-1!
Authentication (Internet) · · · · · 12-10
Auto Answer (Earphone-Microphone) · · 12-2
Auto Answer (Video Call) · · · · · 3-14
Auto Answer List (Video Call) · · · · · 12-20
Auto Focus Lock · · · · · 6-10
Auto Save 12-2
Auto-delete · · · · · · · 4-10, 12-14
Auto-extract ······ 12-1
Available Memory • • • • 13-18, 13-19, 13-20
-
В
Background Play · · · · · 7-10
Backlight Settings · · · · · 12-4, 12-20
Backup
Relocate · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
S! Addressbook Back-up · · · · · · · 11-
Transfer All · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·

Barcode Reader · · · · · 8-18
Battery 1-7, 13-4
Attach · · · · · · 13-!
Charge · · · · · · · 1-7, 12-30
Remove
Battery Level 1-4, 1-5, 13-4
Beeper Mode 13-10
Biometrics · · · · · · 10-5
Overwrite/Delete Face Image · · · · · · · · 10-7
Rename
Reset User · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
Bookmarks5-6
Create Folder · · · · · 5-10
Delete
Edit
Move 5-10
Send via Mail · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · 5-10
BookSurfing® · · · · · · · · · · 8-17
Brightness · · · · · · 12-4
Browser Reset · · · · · 12-17
Browser Settings · · · · · 12-16
Brush Up 6-10

-					
Calculator · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	 				8-13
Currency Conversion ·	 				8-24
Calendar · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	 • • •	• • •	• • •	• • •	8-4
Calendar Lock · · · · ·	 			'	12-32
First View · · · · · · · ·	 			'	12-32
Set Holiday · · · · · · ·	 				8-2

Call3-2	Reset · · · · · · 12-27	Dialed Numbers · · · · · · 3-9
Call Barring · · · · · 3-18	Content Key 2-22	Delete Call Log Records · · · · · · · · · 3-16
Call Barring Service Code · · · · · 1-13	Backup · · · · · · 11-6	Redial · · · · · · 3-13
Change · · · · · · 3-18	Continuous Standby Time · · · · · 13-17	Save to Phone Book · · · · · · · 2-20
Call Forward 3-10	Continuous Talk Time · · · · · 13-17	Dial-up Connections · · · · · 11-10
Call Log3-9	Conversion Prediction · · · · 2-29	Dictionary · · · · 8-13
Call Log Lock 3-16	Converter · · · · · · 8-13, 8-24	Digital Mode·····6-3
Call Time & Cost 3-16, 12-19	Cookie · · · · · 12-16, 12-17	Display · · · · · · 1-3
Call Waiting · · · · · 3-17	Copy (Characters) · · · · · 2-14	Display Characters in Reverse Order · · 2-12
Caller Details · · · · · 12-3	Cost Limit 12-19	Display Settings · · · · · 2-8, 12-2
Camera · · · · · · · · · · · · 6-2	Country Number List · · · · 12-19	Draft 4-15
Settings · · · · · · 12-22	Custom Window · · · · 12-28	
Camera Modes · · · · · · 6-3	Customize Handset Address · · · · · · · 4-3	E
Category 12-11	Cut (Characters) · · · · · 2-14	
Center Access Code····· 1-13		Earphone Microphone Jack · · · · · · · · 1-3
Change View (Switch Browsers) · · · · · · 5-8	D	Earphone-Microphone Answer · · · · · 3-14
Charge Battery · · · · · · 1-7		Earphone-Microphone Call · · · · · 3-14
AC Charger · · · · · · · · · 1-8	Dakuten (*)/Handakuten (*)····· 2-12	Earphone-Microphone Settings · · · · 12-21
Desktop Cradle · · · · · · · 1-7	Data Folder · · · · · 2-22	Earpiece·····1-3
In-Car Charger · · · · · · · 1-8	Available Memory · · · · · · · · 2-32, 13-18	Earpiece Volume (During Call)
PC Connection · · · · · · · 12-30	Date & Time 1-11	S! Circle Talk · · · · · 9-8
Charger Terminal · · · · · · · · 1-3	Date Stamp · · · · · 12-23	Video Call · · · · · · 3-7
Charging Indicator · · · · · · · 1-3	Daylight Saving Time · · · · · 8-12, 12-35	Voice Call
Charging Time · · · · · 13-17	Default Settings · · · · · 13-23	Earpiece Volume Setting · · · · · 3-13
Clear Authentication · · · · 12-17	Delay Timer · · · · · · · · · · · · 6-7	Edit Picture ·····6-8
Clear Cache 12-17	Delete (Characters) · · · · · 2-14	Edit Text 2-14
Clear Field · · · · · 4-14	Delete Messages · · · · · 4-17, 4-18	Message · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · 4-14
Clear Memory · · · · · 12-27	Delivery Check 4-15, 12-12	Effects 6-9, 12-22
Clock Type Setting · · · · · · · · 2-9	Delivery Report · · · · · 4-18	Electronic Books · · · · · 8-17
Color Control 12-22	Delivery Time · · · · · · 4-15, 12-12	E-mail Address/URL Extensions · · · · · 2-14
Confirmation Window (Mail) · · · · 12-12	Desktop Cradle ·····1-7	Emergency Call Location Notification ···3-3

Call3-2

Emergency Calls······3-3	Copy2-34	Grid 12-2
Emoticons · · · · · 2-13	Delete	Group (Mail) · · · · · · · 4-13, 4-14, 12-1
Create · · · · · · 2-29	Details 2-32, 7-11	Group (Phone Book) · · · · 2-18, 2-31, 12-2
Encode · · · · · 6-10	Move · · · · · · 2-24	• •
Encoding Type · · · · · 12-18	Rename · · · · · · 2-34	Н
Equalizer 7-10	Sort by 2-34, 7-10	
Events8-4	Use	Handset Code · · · · · 1-1
Alarm · · · · · · · · · · · · · · 8-4, 12-31	Filter (Mail) · · · · · 12-15	Change · · · · · · · · 10-
Category · · · · · · 12-31	Flicker 12-22	Handset Parts · · · · · · 1-
Check	Folders	Handsfree Call · · · · · 3-1
Delete · · · · · · 8-5, 8-23	Copy Folder · · · · · · 2-34	Handstrap Hole · · · · · · · 1-
Edit8-22	Create Folder · · · · · · · · · 2-23, 5-10	Hiragana to Alphanumerics/Katakana Conversion · · 2-1
Font Color12-32	Delete Folder · · · · · · · 2-35	History (Internet) · · · · · 5-3, 5-
Reminder · · · · · · 8-21	Move Folder · · · · · · · · · 2-34, 4-19	Delete5-
Repeat for · · · · · 8-22	Rename Folder · · · · · · · · · 2-34, 4-17	Hold Answer · · · · · 3-1
Set a Link to Related Information · · · · · 12-31	Font Color · · · · · · · 4-15, 12-3, 12-32	Hold Call 3-1
Show/Hide · · · · · 8-22	Font Settings · · · · · 12-3	Hold Setting (Video Call) · · · · · 12-2
Stamp Icon · · · · · · 12-31	Font Size	_
Expiry Time · · · · · · · 4-15, 12-12	Arrange Mail · · · · · · · 4-5	
Exposure 6-3, 6-6	Display Settings · · · · · · · · · 12-3	
External Device Port · · · · · · · · · · · · · 1-3	Internet · · · · · · · 12-18	IC······ 13-
External Device Settings · · · · · 12-21	Mail	Ichi Navi····· 8-1
External Display · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · 1-3	Text Entry · · · · · · 2-29	Icons
External Light 1-3, 2-31, 12-4	Format Card 2-26	Display · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
	Forward Mail 4-16, 4-18	External Display · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
F	Function Lock · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · 10-4	Message List · · · · · · · · 4-1
r	Tunction Edek 10 1	Text Input Mode · · · · · · 2-1
Feeling Mail · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · 4-5	C	Video Call · · · · · · · · · 3-
File Name (Camera) · · · · · 12-22	G	Idle Screen (Ku-man) · · · · · 12-3
Files	Gamendeco · · · · · 12-2	Image Quality (Camera) · · · · · 12-2
Attach	GMT Offset · · · · · · 12-35	Image Quality (Video Call) · · · · 3-16, 12-2

Reset Options · · · · · · 2-27

Incoming Call Image · · · · · 12-2	Key Shortcut · · · · · 12-22	Simple Mode · · · · · · · · · 2-6, 2-7, 13-11
Incoming Message Image · · · · · 12-2	Keypad · · · · · 1-3, 2-3	Main Screens · · · · · 12-2
Incoming Messages·····4-8	Keypad Light····· 12-4	Manner Mode····· 1-12
Information Prompt · · · · · · · · · · · · · 1-6	Keypad Lock · · · · · · 10-3	Customize Original Mode · · · · · · · · 12-9
Infrared · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · 11-2	Kitchen Timer · · · · · 8-14	Switch Mode · · · · · · · · · 12-9
Authentication Password · · · · · · · · 11-2	Ku-man Mail · · · · · 8-20	Manufacture # 12-16
Dial-up Connections · · · · · · · · · 11-10	Ku-man's Room · · · · · 8-20	Map URL Settings · · · · · 12-34
ON/OFF · · · · · · · 11-2		Media Player·····7-2
Send My Details · · · · · · · · · · · · · · 11-10	L	Backlight · · · · · · · · 12-4
Transfer Files · · · · · · · · · 11-3	-	Priority · · · · · · 12-8
Infrared Port · · · · · · · 1-3, 11-2	Language (言語選択)······ 12-5	Melody List 13-22
Input Method · · · · · 12-28	License Information (S! Appli) · · · · · 12-26	Memory Card · · · · · 2-25
Insert · · · · · 2-29, 4-13	Lighting Time · · · · · · · 12-4	Memory Card Backup · · · · · 11-6
Internal Antenna · · · · · · · · · · · · · · 1-3	Line Break · · · · · · 2-28	Relocate · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
International Call·····3-5	Location Information Send Setting · · 12-34	Memory Status · · · · · 2-30, 2-32
International Code · · · · · 12-19	Loud Speaker (Video Call) · · · · · 12-20	Message Box · · · · · · 4-10
Internet · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	Lower Case · · · · · · · · 2-12	Settings · · · · · · · 12-14
Settings · · · · · · 12-16		Message Details · · · · · 4-19
Internet Security Code · · · · · 1-13	M	Message Folder · · · · · 2-31
Register/Change · · · · · · · · · · · · · · 10-7	III	Message List · · · · · 4-10
IP Service 12-37	Mail Settings · · · · · 12-11	Settings · · · · · · · · 12-14, 12-15
	Creating	Messaging · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · 4-2
J	Display · · · · · · 12-12	Microphone·····1-3
	Receiving · · · · · · 12-13	Missed Call Notification · · · · 3-11
Jump · · · · · 5-10	Sending · · · · · · · 12-13	Mobile Light · · · · · · 1-3, 6-3, 6-6
W	Mail Type · · · · · 4-14	Mobile Mode · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · 6-3
K	Default Type · · · · · · 12-11	Multi Selector·····xi, 1-3, 2-4
Keitaideco · · · · · · 2-3, 2-8, 2-33, 12-2, 12-9	Mailbox Volume · · · · · · · · · 4-17	Reset 2-27
Key Guide	Main Camera ······1-3	Multi Shots · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · 6-7
Camera · · · · · · · · · · · · · 6-3, 6-6	Main Menu · · · · · · · 2-2, 2-3	Multiparty Call · · · · · · 3-17
0 3, 0 0	mani mena 2-2, 2-3	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·

Media Player · · · · · · · · · · 7-5, 7-6

In-Car Charger · · · · · · 1-8

Music File Playback Window 7-4 Mute	Phone Book 2-17 Add New 2-18 Call from 2-20 Change View 2-31 Copy 2-32 Delete 2-32 Edit 2-31 Copy 2-31 2-31 2-31	Rename 7-7 Positioning Lock 12-34 Power On 1-10 Power Saving 12-4 Power-off Screen 1-10, 12-3 Power-on Screen 12-3 Prediction 2-29, 12-28
	Group · · · · · · · 2-31, 12-29 Move · · · · · · 2-32	Preview 12-24 Priority (Mail) 4-16, 12-12
Name Conversion 2-29 Notepad 8-9 Delete 8-9, 8-23 Edit 8-23 Notification (S! Friend's Status) 9-5, 9-9 Number Memo 3-15	Picture 2-19, 12-23 Search Mode 2-20 Sort by 2-31 Phone Book Lock 12-29 Phrase Prediction 2-29, 12-28	Priority Settings
	Pictographs ······ 2-13 Picture Size (Camera) ····· 6-10, 13-20	OR Codes · · · · · · 8-18
0	Picture Size (Edit Picture) ······6-9	Q.: 30465
Offline Mode	PIN Lock 10-7, 13-2 PIN Settings 10-3 PIN/PIN2 13-2 Change 10-7	R Received Calls
P	Play Mode · · · · · 7-10 Player Image · · · · · · 12-25	Delete Call Log Records · · · · · · · 3-16 Save to Phone Book · · · · · · 2-20
Page Details 5-10 Password Lock 10-3 Biometrics 10-5 Paste (Characters) 2-14 PC Connection (USB Connection) 11-4 Charge Battery 12-30 Dial-up Connections 11-10 PC Site Browser 5-4	Playlist 2-25 Add Tracks 7-11 Change Order 7-11 Copy 7-11 Create 7-7 Delete 7-11 Play 7-7 Remove Tracks 7-11	Recent 7-10 Reconvert 2-30 Record Videos 6-5 Settings 12-22, 12-24 Reject Calls 3-14, 12-7 Reload Page 5-8 Relocate 11-10 Reminder 8-21

History8-25

Reply to	Resume · · · · · · · · · · · · 7-8, 7-9	Weather Indicator · · · · · · · 8-16
Activate · · · · · 4-16	Screensaver · · · · · · 7-12	S! Loop·····9-2
Messages · · · · · · 4-9	Start · · · · · · 7-8	S! Mail · · · · · · 4-4
Save an Address · · · · · · · · · · · · 12-12	S! Appli Root Certificates · · · · · 12-26	S! Quick News · · · · · 8-15
Reset All 12-27	S! Appli Settings · · · · · 12-26	Auto Update · · · · · · · 8-25
Reset Learned · · · · · 12-28	S! Circle Talk · · · · · · · · 9-6	Check Updates · · · · · · · · · · · · 2-10
Reset Setting · · · · · 12-27	Add Members · · · · · · 9-7	Clear List · · · · · · 12-6
Internet	Answer · · · · · · 9-8	Delete8-25
Restricted Mode (Web) · · · · · 10-7	Call Another Member · · · · · · · · 9-8	Idle Screen · · · · · · 12-6
Retrieve Mail · · · · · 4-16	Create a Group · · · · · · · 9-7	Ticker Speed · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · 12-6
Retrieve Mode · · · · · 12-13	Delete9-10	Unread/Read · · · · · · · · · · · · 12-6
Retrieve Network Information · · · · 1-10	Edit Group · · · · · · · 9-10	S! Town · · · · · · 9-2
Ring Time · · · · · 2-31, 12-10	Initiate · · · · · · · · · · · · 9-7	Saved Pages · · · · · · · 5-6
Ringtone 2-19, 12-9	S! Friend's Status ·····9-3	Delete5-10
Ringtone Volume · · · · · 2-31, 3-4, 12-9	Add Members · · · · · · · · · · · 9-4, 9-9	Rename · · · · · · 5-10
Root Certificates · · · · · 12-16, 12-26	Call/Send Mail · · · · · · · · · · · · · 9-9	Scan Data 8-18
Rotate Image (Edit Picture) · · · · · 6-11	Change Group · · · · · · 9-9	Screen Display · · · · · 12-24
	Check Member Status · · · · · · · 9-5	Script 12-16
S	Deletion Request · · · · · 9-9	Scrolling · · · · · · 12-12, 12-18
	My Status · · · · · · · · 9-4	Search5-8
S! Addressbook Back-up · · · · · 11-8	Notification · · · · · · · · · · · 9-5, 9-9	Search Mode (Phone Book) · · · · · 2-20
Auto Sync·····11-11	Rename · · · · · · 9-9	Search Time 7-10
Sync Log · · · · · · · · 11-11	Request Reply · · · · · · · · 12-37	Secret · · · · · 2-19
Synchronization Type · · · · · · · · · 11-9	Save Members to Active Window · · · · · 12-37	Secret Mode · · · · · 10-4
S! Appli · · · · · · 7-8	Saving Failed · · · · · · 9-5	Secure Remote Lock · · · · · 10-3
Delete7-12	Saving Request · · · · · 9-5	Security · · · · · · · · 5-2, 12-16, 12-26, 12-27
Details · · · · · 7-12	Status Setting · · · · · · 12-37	Security Lock · · · · · · · 2-24, 4-17, 12-18
Download · · · · · · 7-8	Status Update · · · · · · 9-9	Self-delete····· 4-16
End · · · · · · 7-8, 7-9	S! Information Channel · · · · · 8-16	Self-view · · · · · · 6-3, 6-6, 12-20
Move · · · · · · 7-12	Get Latest · · · · · · 8-25	Send Picture (Video Call) · · · · · 3-16

Replace Text · · · · · 2-30

5-8
-10
-10
- 11 - 12
- 14 6-!
ช-: 2-!
2- :
-2 -2
-2 -2
-2 -2
-∠ -1:
-13
-13
-23
2-4
1-!
-1
-1
-1
-28
-2
4-(
-19
-1
1-3
3-(
-19
-1°
-10
-18
2-9
-28

Speaker1-3
Speaker Volume · · · · · · 12-10
Specifications · · · · · 13-17
Speed Dial·····3-4
SSL/TLS·····5-2
Standby 1-10, 2-8
Start/End Sound · · · · · 12-24
Storage Location
Camera12-22
Internet
Phone Book · · · · · 12-29
Voice Recorder · · · · · · 8-23
Streaming7-3
Sub Camera·····1-3
Sub Menu View ······2-4
Surround · · · · · · · · 7-10
Switch Cameras
Self-view On/Off · · · · · · · 6-3, 6-6
Video Call
Switch Windows (Video Call) 3-16
Symbols · · · · · · · 2-12
2-12
-
T
Take Pictures ······6-3
Settings · · · · · · · 12-22, 12-23
Tasks8-5
Alarm · · · · · · 8-5, 12-32
Check · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
Delete 8-6, 8-23
Edit8-22
Luit 0-22

Priority
Reminder · · · · · · 8-2
Show/Hide · · · · · · 8-2
Stamp Icon 12-3
Status · · · · · · 12-3
asks Lock · · · · · 12-3
emplates (Mail) · · · · · · · 4-
Save 4-1
Switch 4-1
ext Copy · · · · · 4-19, 5-
ext Entry 2-11, 2-2
Beeper Mode · · · · · · 13-1
Settings · · · · · 12-2
Text Entry Keys · · · · · · 13-
ext Input Modes····· 2-1
ime Table · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
Copy8-2
Delete 8-8, 8-2
Settings · · · · · · 12-3
o Group · · · · · · · 4-1
o Playlist · · · · · · 7-1
o/Cc/Bcc · · · · · · · 4-1
ouch Tones····· 3-1
roubleshooting · · · · · · · · · 13-
winkle Light · · · · · · · · 1-3, 12-
Wilkie Light 1-3, 12-

U
Undo · · · · · 2-1!
Unread/Read (Mail) · · · · · · · 12-1

13	-38

4	5
	ь

URL History	Weather Indicator 2-9, 8-16, 12-36 Web Page Operations 5-5 White Balance 12-22 Word List 2-16 Delete All 2-30
V	World Clock · · · · · · 8-12 Rename City · · · · · · 8-24
Vibration 2-31, 12-10, 12-12, 12-26 Video Call	Y Yahoo! Keitai5-3
Video Mail Mode · · · · · · · · · 6-5	
Video Modes··············-6-5	Z
View Type (Data Folder) 2-32 vObjects 2-33 Voice Call 3-4 Call from Phone Book 2-20 Voice Cancel 7-10 Voice Mail 3-11 Voice Memo 3-15 Voice Record 3-15, 12-24 Voice Recorder 8-10 Storage Location 8-23 Volume (S! Appli) 12-26	Zoom (Camera) 6-3, 6-6, 13-20 Zoom (Video Call) 3-16
W	
Wallpaper 2-8 Wallpaper (Edit Picture) 6-11 Warning 12-17 Weather Forecast 2-10, 8-16 Update 8-25	

By User Action

A Access	
Internet · · · · · · 5-3,	5-
Activate	
Barcode Reader · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	3-1
Add	
Country Code to Country Number List · 12 Functions to Shortcuts Menu · · · · · · · · · Members to S! Circle Talk Members List · · · Members to S! Friend's Status Members List · · · 9-4, Phone Number to Auto Answer List · · · · 12 Songs to a Playlist · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	2- 9- 9- 2-2 7-1 5-1
Adjust (Speaker/Earpiece Volume)	
in S! Circle Talk · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
in Video Call·····	
in Voice Call · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	3-
Answer	
Any Key Answer Auto Answer (Earphone-Microphone) · · · 12 Auto Answer (Video Call) · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	2-2 3-1 3-1 3-1 12- 12- 9-

	Mute 3-14 Offline Mode 1-12 Password Lock 10-3 Phone Book Lock 12-29 PIN Lock 10-7, 13-2 S! Information Channel Subscription 8-16 Simple Mode 2-7
	ange
	Alternative Picture (Video Call) · · · 3-16, 12-20
	Call Barring Service Code · · · · · · · · 3-18
	Color of a Date/Day of the Week · · · · · · · 8-21
	E-mail Address of the Handset · · · · · · · 4-3 File Name · · · · · 2-34
	Folder Name · · · · · · · 2-34 Folder Name · · · · · · · · · · 2-34, 4-17
	Font Size (Display) · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · 12-3
	Font Size (Internet) · · · · · · · · · · · · 12-18
	Font Size (Mail) · · · · · · · · · · · · · · 12-12
	Font Size (Mail) 12-12 Font Size (Text Entry Window) · · · · · · 2-29
	Handset Code · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · 10-2
	Image Quality (Video Call) · · · · · · 3-16, 12-20
	Internet Security Code · · · · · · · · 10-7
	Main Menu Pattern (Simple Mode) · · · · · 2-27
	Message Box View Format · · · · · · · 12-14
	My Status · · · · · 9-4
	Picture Size · · · · · · · 6-9
	PIN · · · · · · · 10-7
	Playlist Name · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · 7-7
	Text Encoding Type (Internet) · · · · · · 12-18
	Text Input Modes · · · · · · · · 2-11
h	ange Order
	Files

Main Menu Icons 2-3 Messages 4-19 Phone Book Entries 2-31 Charge (Battery) 5 by USB Connection 12-30 with AC Charger 1-8 with Desktop Cradle 1-7 with In-Car Charger 1-8 Connect 1-8	Phone Book Entry 2-18 Playlist 7-7 S! Mail 4-4 SMS 4-6 Time Table 8-8 vObject 2-33 Wallpaper 6-11 Customize E-mail Address of the Handset 4-3	Tasks 8-6, 8-23 Download Music and Video Files 7-3 S! Appli 7-8 S! Information Channel 8-25 Software Update 13-6 E Edit
Dial-up Connections 11-10 Earphone-Microphone 3-14 PC 11-4, 12-30 USB Connection 11-4	Original Mode12-9	Active Window Members List
Convert (Characters) by Single Kanji Conversion 2-28 Determined Text (Reconvert) 2-30 Hiragana to Alphanumerics/Katakana 2-12 Name 2-29 Copy 2-14 Class on Time Table 8-23 Files 2-34 Folders 2-34 Message Text (Text Copy) 4-19 Phone Book Entries 2-32 Playlist 7-11	Delete Alarms 8-11, 8-24 Backup Data (Memory Card) 11-11 Bookmarks 5-10 Characters 2-14 Classes from Time Table 8-8, 8-23 Contents from S! Quick News/S! Loop Lists 12-6 Entries from S! Circle Talk Members List 9-10 Events 8-5, 8-23 Folders/Files (Data Folder) 2-35 Functions from S! Friend's Status Members List 9-9 Messages 4-18	Entered Text 2-14 Event 8-22 Phone Book 2-31 Picture 6-8 S! Addressbook Back-up 11-8 S! Circle Talk Members List 9-10 S! Friend's Status Members List 9-9 Task 8-22 Enable Active Window Operation 2-9 End S! Appli 7-8, 7-9
Text String in Web Page · · · · · · · · 5-8 Create	Phone Book Entries · · · · · · 2-32 Playlist · · · · · · · · · · · · 7-11	F Format
Emoticon 2-29 Folder 2-23, 5-10 Original Twinkle Light Pattern 12-5	Recorded Messages on Answering Machine · 3-14 S! Appli · · · · · · · · · · · · · 7-12 Server Messages · · · · · · · · · 4-17	Memory Card · · · · · · 2-26 Forward Call Forward · · · · · 3-10

Messages · · · · 4-18 Server Message · · · 4-16	Charging Indicator	Shortcuts Menu Icons 2-27 SMS 4-19
Н	Mobile Light · · · · · · · · · · · 6-3, 6-6	0
Hold Hold Image (Video Call) · · · · · 12-20 Incoming Call · · · · · · · 3-14	Twinkle Light	Open Ku-man's Room · · · · · 8-20
I .	Battery Cover · · · · · · · 13-5	P
Input (Characters) * or ° 2-12 Alphanumerics 2-13 Beeper Mode 12-28, 13-10 E-mail Address/URL Extensions 2-14 Emoticons 2-13 Kanji 2-11 Line Break 2-28 Lower Case 2-12 Pictographs 2-13 Space 2-28 Symbols 2-12	3 Keypad Lock 10-3 10 Password Lock 10-3 14 PIN Lock 13-2 13 Positioning Lock 12-34 14 Secure Remote Lock 10-3 28 Security Lock (Data Folder) 2-24 12 Security Lock (Internet) 12-18 13 Security Lock (Message Box) 4-17 128 Tasks Lock 12-33	Paste 2-14 Characters 2-14 Play Answering Machine 3-5 Background Play 7-10 Files (Data Folder) 2-23 Music 7-4 Music Player 7-5 Playlist 7-7 Video 6-10, 7-5 Voice Recorder 8-10 Protect 4-17
J	Maye	R
Jump to Specified date on Calendar · · · · · · · 8-4	Move Bookmarks 5-10 Files 2-24 Folders 2-34	Receive Messages · · · · · · · · · 4-8, 4-16 S! Friend's Status Notification · · · · · 9-5
L	Messages · · · · · · · 4-11, 4-19	via Infrared······11-3
Light (Flash) Backlight · · · · · · · 12-4	Phone Book Entries 2-32 S! Appli 7-12	Record Answering Machine · · · · · · · · 3-5

Other Party's Voice (Voice Memo) 3-15 Video 6-5 Voice Mail 3-11 Voice Recorder 8-10 Register 8-10 S! Quick News Contents 8-15 Reply to Received Messages 4-9 Reset 12-17 Handset 12-27 Multi Selector 2-27 Prediction/Conversion Dictionary 12-28 Total Call Cost 3-17 Total Call Time 3-17 Restrict Access to the Internet by URL Entry 10-7 Call Barring 3-18 Resume S! Appli 7-8, 7-9	People to Active Window Members List 2-9, 12-37 Phone Book Entry 2-18, 2-30 Phone Number to Reject List 12-7 Saved Pages 5-6 Tasks 8-5 Words to Word List 2-16 Search Phone Book 2-20 Text String on a Web Page 5-8 Send 7-11 Picture/Video Files 7-11 S! Mail 4-4 SMS Message 4-6 Touch Tones 3-15 via Infrared 11-2 Video Call Image 3-7 Set Alarm Alarm 8-11 Start
S	S! Appli · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
Save 4-19 Attachments 4-19 Bookmark 5-6 Drafts 4-15 Events 8-4 File in Web Pages 5-9 My Details 3-13 My Locations 8-19	S! Information Channel Service · · · · 8-16 Suspend S! Appli · · · · · · 7-8 Switch to Simple Mode · · · · · 2-6 T Take
Number Memo·····3-15	Picture · · · · · · 6-3

Take Notes 8-9 on Notepad
Handset Power 1-10 Prediction 12-28 Turn on Handset Power 1-10
U
Update Mail List

Warranty & After Sales Service

Warranty

A warranty card is included with the handset. Carefully read the card and check that the store name and purchase date sections have been filled in correctly. Then, store it in a safe place.

 SoftBank and Toshiba assume no responsibility for damages to you or third parties as a result of a failure, malfunction or faulty operation of the product.

After Sales Service

Be sure to refer to "Troubleshooting" (page 13-7) before submitting your handset for repair. If you are still having problems with your handset, contact your nearest SoftBank Shop or contact SoftBank General Information (page 13-45).

Repair within Warranty Period

Repair is carried out in accordance with the conditions of the warranty.

Repair After Warranty Period

Repair is carried out if possible and the handset owner is responsible for any repair costs.

- During repair, parts may be replaced with used parts that meet our quality standards.
- Data and settings may be lost or altered as a result of failure or repair of your handset. It is, therefore, recommended that you keep a backup copy of important data such as Phone Book data. SoftBank and Toshiba assume no responsibility for any damages due to the loss or alteration of handset data (contents of Phone Book, Data Folder, etc.) and settings as a result of failure or repair of your handset.
- Disassembling or modifying the handset is in violation of Radio Law. Your handset will not be accepted for repairs if it has been modified.

Customer Service

If you have any questions about SoftBank handsets or services, call General Information. For repairs, call Customer Assistance.

SoftBank Customer Centers

From a SoftBank handset, dial toll free at 157 for General Information or 113 for Customer Assistance.

SoftBank Global Call Center

From outside Japan, dial +81-3-5351-3491 (Please take care to dial the correct number. International charges will apply to this call.)

Call These Numbers Toll Free from Landlines

Hokkaido, Aomori, Akita, Iwate, Yamagata, Miyagi, Fukushima, Niigata, Tokyo, Kanagawa, Chiba, Saitama, Ibaraki, Tochigi, Gunma, Yamanashi, Nagano, Toyama, Ishikawa, Fukui	General Information	© 0088-240-157
	Customer Assistance	0088-240-113
Aichi, Gifu, Mie, Shizuoka	General Information	6 0088-241-157
	Customer Assistance	6 0088-241-113
Osaka, Hyogo, Kyoto, Nara, Shiga, Wakayama	General Information	© 0088-242-157
	Customer Assistance	6 0088-242-113
Hiroshima, Okayama, Yamaguchi, Tottori, Shimane, Tokushima, Kagawa, Ehime, Kochi, Fukuoka, Saga, Nagasaki, Oita, Kumamoto, Miyazaki, Kagoshima, Okinawa	General Information	6 0088-250-157
	Customer Assistance	0088-250-113

SoftBank 822T Instruction Manual

SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.

* For additional information, please visit a SoftBank Shop.

Model: SoftBank 822T

Manufacturer: TOSHIBA CORPORATION



Please help the mobile industry maintain high environmental standards. Recycle your old handsets, batteries and charger units (all manufacturers and brands).

- * Handsets, batteries and chargers submitted for recycling cannot be returned.
- * Always erase all data recorded on old handsets (Phone Book entries, call records, mail, etc.) before recycling.